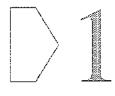


stening and Speaking (





Judith Tanka Paul Mosi

Listerinė & Speakine (



www.mhhe.com/interactionsmosaic

Editorial director: Erik Gundersen Series editor: Valerie Kelemen Developmental editor: Mari Vargo Contributing editor: Ahmed M. Motala Production manager: Juanita Thompson Production coordinator: Vanessa Nuttry

Cover designer: Novimago

Interior designer: Nesbitt Graphics, Inc.

Artists: Burgandy Beam, Chris Dyrud, Kay McCabe, NETS, Laura Nikiel, Linda Bittner,

Jonathan Massie, Allan & Deborah Drew-Brook-Cormack

Photo researchers: Photoquick Research, hyphen Middle East publishing management: hyphen

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written consent of the Publisher.

© 2009, McGraw-Hill Education Shoppenhanger Road Maidenhead Berkshire England SL6 2QL, United Kingdom

ISBN 13: 9780077123987

Printed in U.A.E.



A Special Thank You

The Interactions/Mosaic team wishes to thank our extended team: teachers, students, administrators, and teacher trainers, all of whom contributed invaluably to the making of this edition.

Macarena Aguilar, North Harris College, Houston, Texas Mohamad Al-Alam, Imam Mohammad University, Riyadh, Saudi Arabia E Faisal M. Al Mohanna Abaalkhail, King Saud University, Riyadh, Saudi Arabia Dr. Khalid Al-Nafisah, Teachers' Colleges, Riyadh, Saudi Arabia ■ Amal Al-Toaimy, Women's College, Prince Sultan University, Riyadh, Saudi Arabia Douglas Arroliga, Ave Maria University, Managua, Nicaragua

Fairlie Atkinson, Sungkyunkwan University, Seoul, Korea B Jose R. Bahamonde, Miami-Dade Community College, Miami. Florida - John Ball, Universidad de las Americas, Mexico City, Mexico Mexico Mexico Mexico Steven Bell, Universidad la Salle, Mexico City, Mexico Damian Benstead, Sungkyunkwan University, Seoul, Korea # Paul Cameron, National Chengchi University, Taipei, Taiwan R.O.C. M Sun Chang, Soongsil University, Seoul, Korea ■ Grace Chao, Soochow University, Taipei, Taiwan R.O.C. & Chien Ping Chen, Hua Fan University, Taipei, Taiwan R.O.C.

Selma Chen, Chihlee Institute of Technology, Taipei, Taiwan R.O.C. Sylvia Chiu, Soochow University, Taipei, Taiwan R.O.C. Mary Colonna, Columbia University, New York, New York ■ Lee Culver, Miami-Dade Community College. Miami, Florida E Joy Durighello, City College of San Francisco, San Francisco, California ■ Isabel Del Valle, Ulatina, San Jose, Costa Rica

Linda Emerson, Sogang University, Seoul, Korea Esther Entin, Miami-Dade Community College, Miami, Florida
Glenn Farrier. Gakushuin Women's College, Tokyo, Japan S Su Wei Feng, Taipei, Taiwan R.O.C. Mudith Garcia, Miami-Dade Community College, Miami, Florida ■ Maxine Gillway, United Arab Emirates University, Al Ain, United Arab Emirates & Colin Gullberg, Soochow University, Taipei, Taiwan R.O.C.

Natasha Haugnes, Academy of Art University, San Francisco, California

Barbara Hockman, City College of San Francisco, San Francisco, California Jinyoung Hong, Sogang University, Seoul, Korea ■ Sherry Hsieh, Christ's College, Taipei, Taiwan R.O.C. Yu-shen Hsu, Soochow University, Taipei, Taiwan R.O.C. E Cheung Kai-Chong, Shih-Shin University, Taipei, Taiwan R.O.C.

Leslie Kanberg, City College of San Francisco, San Francisco, California & Gregory Keech, City College of San Francisco, San Francisco, California

Susan Kelly, Sogang University, Seoul, Korea a Dr Hesham Khadawardi, English Language Center, King AbdulAziz University, Jeddah, Saudi Arabia Dr Hamza Kheshaifaty, English Language Center, King AbdulAziz University, Jeddah, Saudi Arabia Myoungsuk Kim, Soongsil University, Seoul, Korea # Youngsuk Kim, Soongsil University, Seoul, Korea B Roy Langdon, Sungkyunkwan University, Seoul, Korea & Rocio Lara, University of Costa Rica, San Jose, Costa Rica a Insung Lee, Soongsil University, Seoul, Korea Andy Leung, National Tsing Hua University, Taipei, Taiwan R.O.C. ™ Elisa Li Chan,

University of Costa Rica, San Jose, Costa Rica Elizabeth Lorenzo, Universidad Internacional de las Americas. San Jose, Costa Rica Magnant, Sungkyunkwan University, Seoul, Korea Marciso Maldonado Iuit, Escuela Tecnica Electricista, Mexico City, Mexico Shaun Manning, Hankuk University of Foreign Studies, Seoul, Korea - Yoshiko Matsubayashi, Tokyo International University, Saitama, Japan ™ Scott Miles, Sogang University, Seoul, Korea & William Mooney. Chinese Culture University, Taipei, Taiwan R.O.C. ■ Jeff Moore, Sungkyunkwan University, Seoul, Korea Mavelin de Moreno, Lehnsen Roosevelt School, Guatemala City, Guatemala Ahmed Motala, University of Sharjah, Sharjah, United Arab Emirates

Carlos Navarro, University of Costa Rica, San Jose, Costa Rica # Dan Neal, Chih Chien University, Taipei, Taiwan R.O.C. Margarita Novo, University of Costa Rica, San Jose. Costa Rica E Karen O'Neill, San Jose State University. San Jose, California "Linda O'Roke, City College of San Francisco, San Francisco, California

Martha Padilla, Colegio de Bachilleres de Sinaloa, Culiacan, Mexico ■ Allen Quesada, University of Costa Rica, San Jose, Costa Rica # Jim Rogge, Broward Community College, Ft. Lauderdale, Florida Marge Ryder, City College of San Francisco, San Francisco, California ™ Gerardo Salas, University of Costa Rica, San Jose, Costa Rica Shigeo Sato, Tamagawa University, Tokyo, Japan E Lynn Schneider, City College of San Francisco, San Francisco, California Devan Scoble, Sungkyunkwan University, Seoul, Korea Maryjane Scott, Soongsil University, Seoul, Korea

Ghaida Shaban, Makassed Philanthropic School, Beirut, Lebanon & Maha Shalok, Makassed Philanthropic School, Beirut, Lebanon & John Shannon, University of Sharjah, Sharjah, United Arab Emirates # Elsa Sheng, National Technology College of Taipei, Taipei, Taiwan R.O.C. ** Ye-Wei Sheng, National Taipei College of Business, Taipei, Taiwan R.O.C.

Emilia Sobaja, Yoon, Sungkyunkwan University, Seoul, Korea # Shanda Stromfield, San Jose State University, San Jose, California ■ Richard Swingle, Kansai Gaidai College, Osaka, Japan Carol Sung, Christ's College, Taipei, Taiwan R.O.C. # Jeng-Yih Tim Hsu, National Kaohsiung First University of Science and Technology, Kaohsiung, Taiwan R.O.C. Shinichiro Torikai, Rikkyo University, Tokyo, Japan Sungsoon Wang, Sogang University, Seoul, Korea Kathleen Wolf, City College of San Francisco, San Francisco, California & Sean Wray, Waseda University International, Tokyo, Japan ≥ Belinda Yanda, Academy of Art University, San Francisco, California 4 Su Huei Yang, National Taipei College of Business, Taipei, Taiwan R.O.C. & Tzu Yun Yu, Chungyu Institute of Technology, Taipei, Taiwan R.O.C.

Author Acknowledgements

Dedicated to my family, friends and to my students around the world.

—Judith Tanka

Photo Credits

Page 3: @Peter Turnley/CORBIS; 4: @The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc./Mannic Media, photographer; 9: @Royalty-Free/CORBIS; 11: @G. Baden/zefa/CORBIS; 13: @PhotoDisc/Getty Images; 23: @Royalty-Free/CORBIS; 24: @The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc./Mannic Media, photographer; 25: @Royalty-Free/CORBIS; 31: @Lynn and Donna Rogers/www.bear.org; 33: @Sonda Dawes/The Image Works; 34 (tl): @Brand X Pictures/PunchStock; 34 (tr): @Creatas/ PunchStock; 34 (bl): @Digital Vision/PunchStock; 34 (br): @Royalty-Free/CORBIS; 36: ©The McGraw-Hill Companies Inc./Ken Cavanagh Photographer; 37: ©Digital Vision/ Getty Images; 41: @Rob Lewine/CORBIS; 42: @The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc./Mannic Media, photographer; 49: @Pando Hall/Getty Images; 52 (tl): @Elizabeth Whiting & Associates/CORBIS; 52 (tr): @Thelma Shimsky/The Image Works; 52 (bl): @Kristin Sladen/The Image Works: 52 (br): @RubberBall Productions/Getty Images; 58 (1): @John A. Rizzo/Getty Images; 58 (r): @Mitch Hrdlicka/ Getty Images; 63: @Ronnie Kaufman/CORBIS; 64: @The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc./Mannic Media, photographer; 70: @Royalty-Free/CORBIS; 72 (tl): @Andrew Ward/Life File/Getty Images; 72 (tr): ©Royalty-Free/CORBIS; 72 (b): ©D. Normark/PhotoLink/ Getty Images: 73 (all): ©The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc./Mannic Media, photographer; 82: ©The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc./Andy Resek, photographer; 83: ©Alexander Walter/Getty Images; 84: @The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc./Mannic Media, photographer; 96: @Martial Colomb/Getty Images; 101: @Marilyn Angel Wynn/Nativestock Pictures/CORBIS; 102: @The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc./Mannic Media, photographer; 107: @Haruyoshi Yamaguchi/CORBIS; 110: ©SW Productions/Getty Images; 115: ©Royalty-Free/CORBIS; 121: ©The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc; 122: ©The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc./Mannic Media, photographer; 128 (1): © Dynamic Graphics/JupiterImages; 128 (r): ©Royalty-Free/CORBIS; 132: ©Keith Brofsky/Getty Images; 133: @PhotoDisc/PunchStock; 136: @Mika/zefa/CORBIS; 137: ©D. Falconer/ PhotoLink/Getty Images; 140: ©The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.; 143: © Bohemian Nomad Picturemakers/CORBIS; 144: ©The McGraw-Hill Companies. Inc./Mannic Media, photographer; 148: ©P. Winbladi/zefa/CORBIS; 149 (all); ©The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.; 155: @Peter Worth/Alamy; 158: @Fred Mullane/NewSport/CORBIS; 161: @Michael A. Keller/zefa/CORBIS; 162: @ The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc./ Mannic Media, photographer; 166 (I): ©Royalty-Free/CORBIS; 166 (r): ©Tim Hall/Getty Images; 170 (tl): ©Big Cheese Photo/JupiterImages; 170 (tm): @Vicky Kasala Getty Images; 170 (tr): @Ross Anania/Getty Images; 170 (bl): @Steve Cole/ Getty Images; 170 (bm): @Ryan McVay/Getty Images; 170 (br): @Amos Morgan/ Getty Images; 175: Courtesy of Connecticut Dept. of Transportation; 176 (tr): Jane Melin, Bremerton Symphony Association/HMS Communications; 176 (bl): @Universal/courtesy Everett Collection; 176 (br): @Toshifumi Kitamura/AFP/ Getty Images; 181: ©Toby Melville/Reuters/CORBIS; 182: ©Lawrence M. Sawyer/Getty Images; 183 (all): ©The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc./Mannic Media, photographer; 186: ©C Squared Studios/Getty Images; 187 (1): ©Ryan McVay/Getty Images; 187 (r): ©Royalty-Free/CORBIS; 189: @Anne Ryan/NewSport/CORBIS; 191 (1 to r): @Fred Mullane/NewSport/CORBIS, @Hans Neleman/zefa/CORBIS; ©Fred Mullane/NewSport/CORBIS; 195 (1): ©Digital Vision/Getty Images; 195 (r): @Royalty-Free/CORBIS; 196: @Design Pics/Alamy; 197 (tl): @Duomo/CORBIS; 176 (tr): ©Brand X Pictures/PunchStock; 197 (b): ©Ryan McVay/Getty Images.

Table of Contents

Chapter 📆	Academic Life Around the World	2
Chapter 2	Experiencing Nature	22
Chapter 🛐	Living to Eat, or Eating to Live?	40
Chapter 🔼	In the Community	62
Chapter 5	Home	82
Chapter 👩	Cultures of the World	100
Chapter 🔀	Health	120
Chapter 🔞	Entertainment and the Media	142
Chapter 🖸	Social Life	160
Chapter 🔟	Sports	180
Audioscript Vocabulary Index .		208 236
	Chapter Chapte	Chapter I Living to Eat, or Eating to Live? Chapter In the Community. Chapter I Home. Chapter Cultures of the World. Chapter Health. Chapter Entertainment and the Media. Chapter Social Life.

Welcome to Interactions/Mosaic Middle East Edition

Interactions/Mosaic Middle East Edition is a fully-integrate academic skills series. Language proficiencies are articulated from the beginning through advanced levels within each of the four language ski strands. Chapter themes articulate across the four skill strands to systematically recycle content, vocabulary, and grammar.

NEW to the Middle East Edition:

- World's most popular and comprehensive academic skills series—thoroughly updated for today's global learners
- Full-color design showcases compelling instructional photos to strengthen the educational experience
- Enhanced focus on vocabulary building, test taking, and critica thinking skills promotes academic achievement
- New strategies and activities for the TOEFL® iBT build invaluable test taking skills
- New "Best Practices" approach promotes excellence in language teaching

NEW to Interactions 1 Listening/Speaking:

- All new content: Chapter 10 Sports
- Transparent chapter structure—with consistent part headings, activity labeling, and clear guidance—strengthens the academic experience
- All-new Interactions photo program features a cast of engaging, multi-ethnic students participating in North American college life
- New vocabulary index offers students and instructors a chapter-bychapter list of target words
- Online Learning Center features MP3 files from the Student Bool audio program for students to download onto portable digital audio players

^{*} TOEFL is a registered trademark of Education Testing Service (ETS). This publication is not endorsed or approved by ETS.

Interactions/Mosaic Best Practices

Our Interactions/Mosaic team has produced an edition that focuses on Best Practices, principles that contribute to excellent language teaching and learning. Our team of writers, editors, and teacher consultants has identified the following six interconnected Best Practices:

Making Use of Academic Content

Materials and tasks based on academic content and experiences give learning real purpose. Students explore real world issues, discuss academic topics, and study content-based and thematic materials.

• rganizing Information

Students learn to organize thoughts and notes through a variety of graphic organizers that accommodate diverse learning and thinking styles.

Scaffolding Instruction

A scaffold is a physical structure that facilitates construction of a building. Similarly, scaffolding instruction is a tool used to facilitate language learning in the form of predictable and flexible tasks. Some examples include oral or written modeling by the teacher or students, placing information in a larger framework, and reinterpretation.

Activating Prior Knowledge

Students can better understand new spoken or written material when they connect to the content. Activating prior knowledge allows students to tap into what they already know, building on this knowledge, and stirring a curiosity for more knowledge.

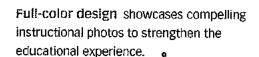
Interacting with Others

Activities that promote human interaction in pair work, small group work, and whole class activities present opportunities for real world contact and real world use of language.

Culitvating Critical Thinking

Strategies for critical thinking are taught explicitly. Students learn tools that promote critical thinking skills crucial to success in the academic world.

Highlights of Interactions 1 Listening/Speaking Middle East Edition



Interacting with Others

Questions and topical quotes stimulate
interest, activate prior knowledge, and
launch the topic of the unit.

Chapter

10

Sports

Connecting to the To

- 1 Look at the photo. What's happening?
- 2 What are your favorite sports to watch? Why?
- What qualities do you think someone needs in order to become a successful autilote? Explain.

In Tills Chapter

Conversation:

Explaining a Sport

Speech: A Female Wrester

Getting Meaning from Context: Which Sport is It?

Real-World Tasks: Radio Sports Repor

I've failed over and over and over again in my life and that is why I succeed 57

> —Michael Jordan American baskethali player, (1963–)



Making Use of Academic Content Lectures, academic discussions, and conversations among university students explore stimulating topics.

Scaffolding Instruction Instruction and practice build gradually to support student in the listening tasks.

Listening for Main ideas Listen to advice from a radio show called, "Eating ht!" As you listen, answer this question

What are some important things you can do to eat right?

Taking Notes on Specific Information Usian again. This time. complete e chart with Bob and Pam's purice. Try to eatch as many details as you can.

Things You Should.	(Take SAPT) E	Dramples.
vagatables	fiver,	corrots.
	!	
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Jidnies You Shaddard Eat or Oring	Reasons	Examples.
		<u>:</u>
: 	<u> </u>	<u> </u>
	<u> </u>	·
1		

Summarizing Ideas

 Compare notes with a partner. Together, summarize in complete sentences the advice you heard. Include reasons and examples Tell your pariner if you have tried any of these ideas for healthy esting.

You should get a counct for a snock because it's a regetable that has ...

2. With your class, make a list on the board of additional cost and don'ts about healthy eating. Tell the class which ones you have tried and # they worked well.

Using Vocabulary Discuss the following questions with a partner. Use the derlined vocabulary in your answers.

- 1. Which meal are you least likely to skip, and which meal are you most likely to skip? Why?
- Bodylmilders, fordfall players, and other athletes often try to gain weight and strength. What specific types of food would you suggest for these people. to ear?
- Whot do you set or drink that you know may be had for your teeth? Would you consider stopping? Would you set down on these thangs? How do you try to applied the down? assid tooth decay?
- 4. Bu you over Hink about the number of <u>colories</u> in certain foods you can't he you read food labels? Why, or why not?
- S. Which of your favorite foods do you think are the best sources of <u>vitamins</u> and
- 6. What kinds of foods do you eat to get fiber in your diet?

Goungaring Eating Habits "Eating habits" are your exists customs. They kickings where, where, and what you eat. Take notes in the chart below. Then use the chart to talk about differences between your eating habits at home and the way you eat when you trave! somewhere.

ethan d'intant Plume	Mile 12 tave
) cat rive for brankfost	l eat careal for breakfast.
	<u> </u>
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	I cat rice for

also alligne to Eat, or Eating to tive?

Cultivating Critical Thinking Critical thinking strategies and activities equip students with the skills they need for academic achievement.

Highlights of Interactions 1 Listening/Speaking Middle East Edition

Activating Prior Knowledge Pre-listening activities place the listening in context and allow the student to listen actively.

Enhanced focus on vocabulary building promotes academic achievement.

Relation Conversation: Learning New Customs

Presistening Questions sefare you liston, talk about traval with a partier



- 1. Placets, the oftention in the photo. Why should be Salow use her cell photos?
- $\mathbf{2}.$ To you know the expression "When in Nome, the peting Romans de"? Tell about o fonce when you followed this advice
- How do you feel when yet travel to a new place, most new grouple, and
 experience new customs? Cacle the works in the box that doesnike how you
 feel. £X1 also regive exceptes of times that you have had these feelings.

excited energenc nomes ck worned interested Carrous

Previewing Vocabulary Listen to the underlined words. You will be a close worlds in the conversation. Then use the context to guess their meanings. Wrise your greates in the spaces.

 My 416t <u>impression</u> of my new bass was not good to seemed strict and unliterally writen i first met farm, but rate like turn. 	d.
 cison't like getsing up at 6.4.0., but I am upod to In now become live heen doing it every day for three years 	
3. NY, and Mrs. Haley (see to travel to explic places They like unusual and interesting variations.	
 If you don't finish your food in an American restausant you can take the terrasting tood from in a dagge bag. 	,
 When Farthers in the e.s., I was <u>emased</u> by steriorated of Single cars on the road. There we're \$5 meany! We have enty small cars where this fieral. 	
 Our teacher has not given us a for all homework so fer, but maybe shall give us more dext week. 	···· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
 When we finished driver, we saved the <u>leftovers</u> in the refrigerator. 	



Listening for Main Ideas, retained and her friend same, who is writing from Rebarron , are having lunch. Xen) is also having lunch at the restaurant. Close your book 35 you based to the conversation. Lister- for the answers to these questions.

- 1. What is Sahuria improvision of the Paired States?
- 2. What surprised Salara in the restaurant?

Compare and discuss enswers with a pariser.

102 Chanter 6 # # #

PP Cultures of the world 103

TOEFL® iBT build invaluable test Graphic organizers provide tools for taking skills. organizing information and ideas. Strategy . Part & Strategies for Better Listening and Speaking Graphic Organizer: Concept Map A concept map can help you organize your notes when a speaker is comparing two or more sides of a topic. You can also use a concept map to organize your TO THE WILLIAM TO THE PARTY OF own ideas when you are making this kind of com-<u>105517 (81)</u> Focus on Testing Taking Notes on Specific Information Listen again. As you listen, write the using Context Class Many lesis such as the TOREL® AT measure your key words about big cities and small toyns. academic issuening and speaking abilities. This activity and others in the book, will develop your social and academic communication abilities, and provide a coundation for succession a variety of standard and tests. Listen to the following Big Cities conversations between roommales. 1. Eisten to the beginning of each posycesation 2. Eastern to the question for each conversation, \$100 the recording and choose the best answer to each question. Remember to use claims, signals, woxels you 8ad Things know, grammer, stress, and introstion to help you gress. 3. In the Claes column, write the words that helped you choose your answer 4. Listen to the last part of each conversalian to hear the correct answer Answers A studied for all exam
 Tupo a topy thends over © taked with a triend unt ₹3.00 × v 2. (A) tjecause stie is massy axia diversina clean (E) because she want tak to her
(E) pecause she cheant take care of the furniture 3. (A) they like the same television shows (a) they oscally stated the news C share's only one television in the house a. 🐼 this recommence should play more than both his recommate uses the phone incommath (E) les roommale should pay at the bis 5. (A) IL nas leur bedrooms (E) It's not comfortable for low pecusion the rent is swared by four roommakes

Chapter 5 = = =

Organizing Information

Chapter 4 = = =

New strategies and activities for the

Scope and Sequence

Listening

ideas

Listening for main

■ Listening for details

Listening to an

advisor's

Chapter

page 2

Academic Life

Around the World

	presentation Distinguishing among s endings	messages Discussing body language	 Distinguishing mair ideas from details Summarizing ideas using key words
2 Experiencing Nature page 22	 Listening for main ideas Listening for details Distinguishing between can and can't Listening to a story about camping Listening to weather forecasts 	 Discussing vacation plans Talking about abilities Talking about the weather and seasons Expressing likes and dislikes 	 Interpreting a phot Using a T-chart to compare two sides topic Distinguishing mair ideas from details Summarizing ideas using key words
3 Living to Eat, or Eating to Live? page 40	 Listening for main ideas Listening for details Distinguishing between teens and tens Listening to radio advice on healthy eating Connecting native foods to their locations 	 Interviewing people about food shopping Using count and non-count nouns in questions Comparing eating habits at home and when traveling Ordering food Refusing food politely 	 Interpreting a phote Interviewing with possible follow-up questions Taking notes on call and effects Explaining a proces Speculating on the outcome of a situal

Speaking

■ Introducing yourself

■ Leaving telephone

☐ Giving telephone

and others

messages

Critical Thinking

■ Guessing meaning

■ Interpreting a phot

■ Predicting the cont

before listening

from context

Vocabulary Building	Pronunciation	Focus on Testing
 Expressions used in introductions Terms related to arrival and orientation at college or university Casual expressions for making friends Instructions (imperatives) used in telephone messages 	 Identifying and practicing stressed words Comparing reduced and unreduced pronunciation Pronouncing -s endings 	 Using context clues to guess the correct answers to questions TOEFL® IBT
 Terms to express abilities Terms to describe the weather and seasons Terms to talk about likes and dislikes 	 Identifying and practicing stressed words Comparing reduced and unreduced pronunciation Pronouncing can and can't 	■ Using context clues to identify seasons (TOEFL® IBT)
 Terms used in shopping for food at a market Terms to talk about healthy eating Count and non-count nouns to express quantities of food Terms for ordering food in a restaurant Polite refusals 	 Identifying and practicing stressed words Comparing reduced and unreduced pronunciation Pronouncing teens and tens 	■ Using context clues to guess locations TOEFL® IET

4 In the Community page 62



- Listening for main ideas
- Listening for details
- Following directions
- Talking about running errands
- Describing locations in a city
- Asking for and giving directions
- Describing your neighborhood
- Comparing cities and towns

- Interpreting a phote
- Using a concept make comparisc
- Summarizing ideas using key words

5 Home page 82



- Listening for main ideas
- Listening for details
- Distinguishing among past tense -ed endings
- Listening to a house tour
- Following house-sitting instructions

- Talking about finding somewhere to live
- Describing a moving day
- Interviewing someone about an apartment
- Making and answering requests
- Interviewing possible roommates

- Interpreting a phote
- Explaining a proces
- Taking notes while separating positive from negative deta
- Using a multi-colun chart to fill in notes and organize a plar
- Summarizing ideas using key words

6 Cultures of the World page 100



- Listening for main ideas
- Listening for details
- Listening to a lecture about coming of age ceremonies
- Listening to instructions for setting a formal dinner table

- Comparing customs
- Discussing minimum age requirements in different cultures
- Talking about dining customs and table manners
- Apologizing

- Interpreting a photo
- Using a matrix diag to organize ideas
- Summarizing ideas using key words

7 Health page 120



- Listening for main ideas
- Listening for details
- Listening to a health club tour
- Distinguishing between rising and falling intonation in tag questions
- Listening to medical advice
- Listening to phone messages from healthcare professionals

- Forming and using tag questions with correct intonation
- Asking for and giving advice
- Discussing smoking—advertising and laws
- Talking to healthcare workers: making appointments by phone

- Interpreting a photo
- Using a problemsolution chart to lis and clarify symptor and treatments
- Completing a questionnaire on stress and interprethe score
- Summarizing a med visit using key word

Vocabulary Building	Pronunciation	Focus on Testing
 Terms to describe locations in a city Expressions for giving and asking for directions 	 Identifying and practicing stressed words Comparing reduced and unreduced pronunciation 	■ Using context clues to guess locations TOEFL® IBT
 Terms to talk about apartments Common verbs related to moving Expressions for making and answering requests Verbs and frequency expressions to explain homecare 	 Identifying and practicing stressed words Comparing reduced and unreduced pronunciation Pronouncing past tense -ed endings 	■ Using context clues to guess what speakers are implying TOEFL® iBT
 Adjectives describing feelings Expressions for apologizing Correct use of 'I'm sorry' vs. 'Excuse me' Terms used related to table settings and table manners 	 Identifying and practicing stressed words Comparing reduced and unreduced pronunciation 	 Using context clues to identify culturally incorrect behaviors TOEFL® IBT
 Terms connected with a health club Terms describing symptoms and remedies Expressions for giving and accepting advice Terms used in expressing agreement or disagreement 	 Identifying and practicing stressed words Contrasting rising and falling intonation in tag questions 	 Using context clues to identify unusual details within situations TOEFL® IBT

8 Entertainment and the Media page 142



- Listening for main ideas
- Listening for details
- Listening to opinions about television
- Listening to a news report
- Listening to radio ads
- Expressing, agreeing with, and disagreeing with opinions
- Discussing the qualities of good ads
- Talking about types of TV programs
- Describing favorite TV shows and movies
- Interpreting a phot
- Identifying the four "W's" in a news ret
- Summarizing news reports using key words
- Locating informatic a TV guide.

9 Social Life page 160



- Listening for main ideas
- Listening for details
- Interpreting intonation used with exclamations
- Listening to a conversation on meeting old friends and a marriage match
- Listening to phone calls on entertainment

- Discussing customs
- Giving and accepting compliments
- Discussing Parties
- Discussing preferences and experiences in spending free time
- Interpreting a phote
- Comparing interest old friends
- Gathering informat from entertainmen advertisements
- Summarizing resea on upcoming event

10 sports page 180



- Listening for main ideas
- Listening for details
- Listening to a conversation about martial arts
- Listening to a talk by a wrestler
- Listening to a sportscast

- Explaining a sport
- Giving and understanding instructions
- Playing "Twenty Questions"
- Using correct nouns and verbs to describe sports and athletes
- Interpreting a phote
- Organizing notes in an outline
- Summarizing a spe using key words

Vocabulary Building

Pronunciation

Focus on Testing

- Terms for expressing opinions, agreeing and disagreeing
- Terms related to TV-watching habits
- Terms to describe types of TV programs
- Identifying and practicing stressed words
- Comparing reduced and unreduced pronunciation
- Using context clues to identify products and services in commercials

TOEFL® IBT)

- ▼ Terms connected with friendship
- Exclamations
- Expressions used in giving and accepting compliments
- Terms to talk about personal qualities and compatibility
- Terms connected with parties and common entertainment activities
- Identifying and practicing stressed words
- Using appropriate intonation with exclamations
- Using context clues to guess the nature of interpersonal relationships

TOEFL® IBT)

- Nouns vs. verbs to describe sports and athletes
- Terms used in a sportscast
- Terms for giving instructions
- Terms to ensure comprehension
- Terms to ask for clarification
- Identifying and practicing stressed words
- Comparing reduced and unreduced pronunciation
- Pronouncing the North American t
- Dropping the h sound in unstressed words
- Using context clues to identify different sports

TOEFL® IBT)

Introducing the Interactions 1 Listening/Speaking Characters



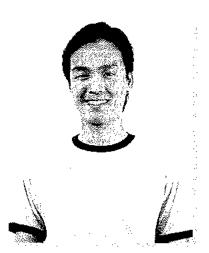
Name: Ming Nationality: Chinese



Name: Peter Nationality: Puerto Rican



Name: Jack Nationality: American



Name: **Lee** Nationality: **Korean**



Name: **Ali** Nationality: **American**



Name: Salma Nationality: Lebanese



Name: Yolanda Nationality: American



Name: **Kenji** Nationality: **Japanese**



Name: **Andrew** Nationality: **American**

Chapter

Academic Life Around the World

manis Granter

Conversation:

Meeting New Friends

Presentation:

School Orientation

Getting Meaning from Context: New School Experiences

Real-World Tasks:

Listening to Telephone Messages

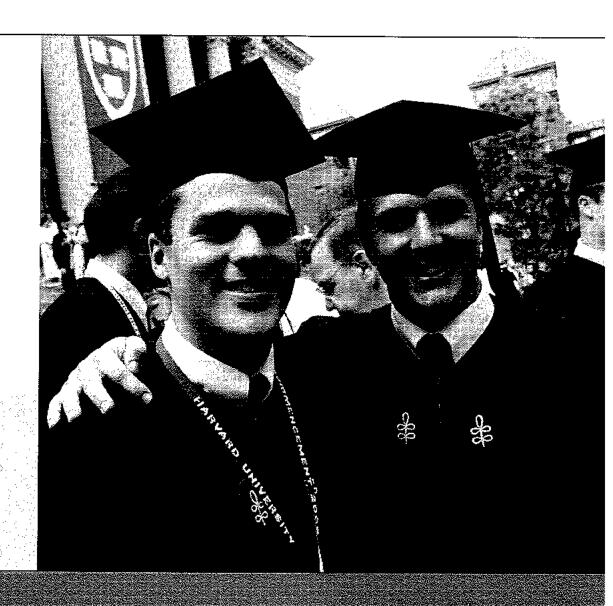
LE Teachers open the door. You enter by yourself. 35

-Chinese prover



Connecting to the Topic

- Look at the people in the photo. Where are they? What's their relationship to one another?
- 2 Think of some of your close friends. How did you meet them?
- 3 What types of information are important to get on the first day of a new class?

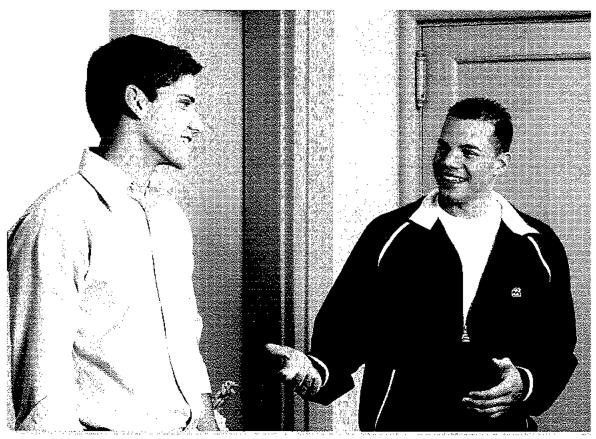


Part 1 Conversation: Meeting New Friends

Biologo (ninksia)



Prelistening Questions Answer the questions with a partner.



Jack and Peter in the lobby of their building

- 1. What do you say when you meet someone for the first time?
- 2. What body language or gestures do you use when you meet someone new? For example, do you hug or shake hands?
- 3. What body language or gestures do you use when you greet a good friend? A classmate? A co-worker?



Previewing Vocabulary Listen to these words and phrases from the conversation. Then complete the sentences with the words and phrases.

	ne over (come over) ve into	Expressions call me No kidding!	
stop	•		
take			•
1.	His name is Kenji. I don't think tha Japanese.	t's an English name.	t <u>sounds</u>
2.	We have a new house, but we can't	t	_ it until next month.
3.	My friend is in the hospital. I will $_$ her flowers.		tomorrow and bring
4.	You have seven brothers and one s	ister?	
5.	My name is Robert Browning. But	please,	Bob.
6.	I was born in the United States, bu Korea 35 years ago.	it my parents	from
7.	If your major is Asian Studies, I'm Chinese and probably some other		
	3 4 3 158		
The	Listening for Main Ideas Jack, y meet in the lobby of their apartmen pare to answer these questions:		
1.	Which students already know each	other?	
2.	What information do you find out a	about Bruce?	
3.	What will the students do after thi	s conversation?	
Con	npare and discuss your answers with	a partner.	
	Listening for Details Listen aga F if it is false.	in if necessary. Write 7	if a statement is tr⊔e
	1. Bruce was born in Hong Kon	g.	
	2. Peter plans to take a Chinese	e class.	
	3. Jack and Peter are roommate	es.	



In spoken English, important words are stressed. This means that they are spoken louder, longer, or higher than other words. Stressed words usually give the most important information. These kinds of words are usually stressed: verbs, nouns, adjectives, adverbs, numbers, and negatives like "isn't," "don't," and "can't."

Example

My name is Peter.
I'm in apartment two-twelve.
Maybe you could help me.
We're on the same floor.



Listening for Stressed Words Listen to the conversation again. Some of the stressed words are missing. During each pause, repeat the phrase or sentence. Then fill in the blanks with the words you hear.

Jack:	
Peter:	Hi. You're, right?
Jack:	Yeah. And,, you're ?
Peter:	Peter. Peter Riley.
Jack:	Oh, yeah, we on last
	week. Peter, this is my, Bruce Lee. He's just
	into the
Peter:	Hi, Bruce Lee.
Bruce:	to you. You can
	just me Bruce. Lee's my
	-
Peter:	Oh. Lee. That
Bruce:	Chinese.
Peter:	Oh. So, you're from
Bruce:	from San Francisco. My parents
	from Hong Kong before I was
Peter:	Oh, that's cool. Actually, uh, I was of taking
	this Maybe you
	could me.
Bruce:	Well, my Chinese really isn't very

Jack:	Uh, listen, Peter. We're		
	you want to get	to	with us?
Peter:	Sorry, I	I have to go	my
	new		
Jack:	Oh, OK. Well,	by sometime	e. I'm up in
Peter:	Hey, I'm on the same $_$		n
Jack:	No kidding		
Peter:	Well,	•	_ you, Bruce. I'm sure
	I'll	you	 +
Bruce	and Jack: See you late	r.	
Now read correctly.		vo other classmates. Practi	ce stressing words
Redua	410115		



In spoken English, important words are usually stressed. Other words are not stressed; they are often reduced or shortened. These kinds of words are often reduced: prepositions, articles, pronouns, forms of the verb to be, and the words and, or, and but.

Unreduced Pronunciation

Do you want to ... How are you doing? Nice to meet you.

Reduced Pronunciation*

D'ya wanna . . . How're ya doing? Niceta meetcha.

Speakers usually use unreduced pronunciation in formal speech and reduced pronunciation in informal speech.



Comparing Unreduced and Reduced Pronunciation The following sentences come from the conversation. Listen for the difference between unreduced and reduced pronunciation. Repeat both forms after the speaker.

Unreduced Pronunciation

Reduced Pronunciation*

- 1. Hi! How are you doing?
- 2. Do you want to get something to eat with us?
- 3. I have to meet my new classmates.
- 4. I'll see you soon.

Hi! How're ya doing?

D'ya wanna get something to eat with us?

I hafta meet my new classmates.

I'll see ya soon.

^{*} Note: The reduced forms are not acceptable spellings in written English.



Listening for Reductions Listen to the following sentences. You'll hear the reduced pronunciations of some words. Repeat each sentence during the pause. Then write the unreduced forms of the missing words in the blanks.

1.	 	 feeling?

2. ______ in an hour.

a. Jack, ______eat at the cafeteria?

With a partner, read the sentences. Practice reduced pronunciation.





Reviewing Vocabulary work in pairs: Student A should look at page 200. Student B should look at page 204.

Pronunciation



THE -S ENDING

The -s at the end of verbs, plural nouns, and possessive nouns can be pronounced differently, depending on the end of the word.

/iz/ after -ch, -sh, -s, -x, and -z endings.

Examples

teaches, boxes, buses, brushes

/s/ after voiceless -k, -f, -p, or -t endings.

Examples

drinks, stops, hits, puts

/z/ after voiced endings.

Examples

carries, brings, father's, rides



Distinguishing Among -s Endings Listen and write the words. Then check the sound you hear. The first one is done as an example.

		/iz/	/s/	/ Z /
1	plays	Q	٦	ď
2		ū	Э	o
3			3	O
4			3	٥
5			2	٥
6			3	٥
7			٦	٥
8			۵	٥
9			a	٥
10		ū	۵	٥



Pronouncing -s Endings Work with a partner. Ask each other the following questions and answer them in complete sentences. Pay attention to the pronunciation of the -s endings.

- 1. Where does your teacher work?
- 2. What does he or she teach?
- 3. How much homework does your teacher give you?
- 4. When does your class begin?
- 5. When does your class end?
- 6. How many books does a college student usually buy each term?
- **7.** How long does it take for you to get to school?
- 8. What kind of things do you bring to school every day?
- 9. How many subjects did you study in high school?
- 10. What does a student do if he or she wants to ask a question in class?



▲ How much homework does your teacher give you?

INTRODUCING YOURSELF AND OTHERS

Read this part of the conversation between Peter, Jack, and Bruce. Notice the words Jack uses to introduce Bruce.

Jack: Peter, this is my friend, Bruce Lee.

Peter: Hi, Bruce.

Bruce: Nice to meet you.

The following expressions are often used when English speakers introduce themselves or others.

Functions		Expressions	
	Speaker A	Speaker B	Speaker C
Introducing Others	Sharon, this is my friend, Kim.	Hi, Kim.	Nice to meet you.
	Linda, I'd like you to meet my classmate, Evan.	Good to meet you, Evan.	You, too.
	Mom, I'd like to introduce you to my teacher, Mr. Saunders.	Pleasure to meet you.	Same here.
Introducing Yourself	Hi, I'm Judy. I'm your neighbor in 206.	Nice to meet you.	
	My name is Denise.	Hi, Denise. I'm Ricardo.	



- Making Introductions Practice introducing classmates to each other.
 - 1. Sit in a circle if possible.
- 2. Write your first name on a card and put the card on your desk for everyone to see.
- 3. Ask a student next to you three or four questions like these:
 - Where are you from?
 - What do you do?
 - Do you work?
 - Do you have a hobby?
- 4. Now introduce your partner to several other students in the class.

Example Jose, this is Noriko. Noriko, this is Jose. Jose is from Mexico. He's a full-time student. He enjoys sports and reading.

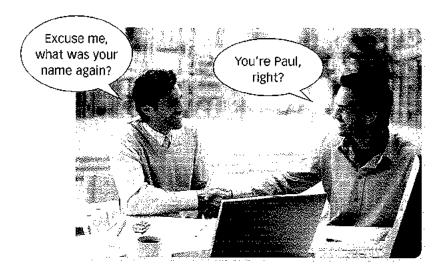
Culture Note -

in informal introductions, English speakers use first names. In formal situations, they use titles such as Mr., Mrs., or Ms.

When introducing someone, don't just say his or her name. It's polite to give some information to help begin a conversation. (This is my friend, cousin, instructor.)

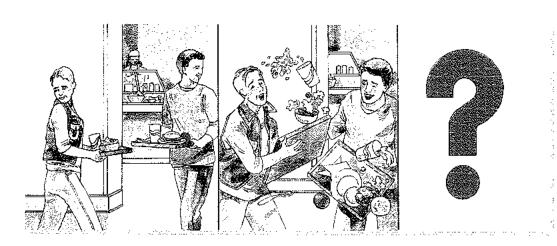
When meeting someone for the first time, it isn't polite to ask personal questions about money, age, or religion.

- 5. Put away your name cards. Walk around the room and see how many names you can remember. If you can't remember someone's name, use expressions like these:
 - Excuse me, what was your name again?
 - I'm sorry, can you tell me your name again?
 - I'm sorry, I didn't catch your name.
 - You're Paul, right?





Role-Play: A First Meeting Joe and Peter are students at the same college. They meet for the first time at the student cafeteria when their trays collide. What do they say? How do they feel? Will they meet again? Prepare a conversation with a partner. Memorize your lines and put on a skit for the class.



Part 2:

Presentation: School Orientation

sikilike Yanduskin



Prelistening Questions You will hear a short speech by a school advisor on the first day of an English language program. Before you listen, answer these questions with a partner.

- 1. What usually happens on the first day in a language program?
- 2. What information do students probably get?
- 3. How did you feel on the first day of your English program or course?



Previewing Vocabulary Listen to the underlined words and phrases. You will hear the underlined words and phrases in the presentation. Write the letter of the correct definition beside each sentence.

Sentences

My advisor always gives me good advice about what classes to take.
 David has a busy schedule. He has two classes in the morning and three classes in the afternoon.
 Many large universities in North America have swimming pools, tennis courts, and other sports facilities.
 New workers in my company go to an orientation on their first day of work to learn all the necessary information about the company rules.
 I'm not sure if my English is intermediate or advanced, so I have to take a placement test.

Definitions

- a. A list of activities and their times
- b. Places or areas for special activities
- c. An exam to find a student's correct place or level
- d. A person who helps you plan your courses
- e. An informational meetir



Strategy

Hints for Taking Notes

- Don't try to write everything you hear.
- Focus only on important information.
- Don't write complete sentences; write key words only.
- Don't write small details.





Listening for Main Ideas



An advisor gives a presentation to new students

- 1. Listen to the advisor's presentation. To help you remember the main ideas, take notes on a piece of paper. (Complete this before continuing to item 2.)
- 2. Look at the notes below. They show the main ideas of the presentation. Do your notes have the same points? If yes, then you understood the main ideas!

Main Ideas

Speaker: Gina Richards Schedule Today:

- Placement Test
- Orientation
- Campus Tour





Listening for Specific Information Listen again. This time, add details to the main ideas.

Main Ideas and Details

Speaker:	Gina	Richards

Schedule Today:

Placement Test

Orientation

Campus Tour



Summarizing Ideas Compare your notes with a partner's. Summarize the presentation in your own words. As you speak, look at your notes to help you remember.

Example In this speech, Gina Richards speaks to new students in an English program. Gina is an advisor. She tells them about . . .



Reviewing Vocabulary Ask and answer the following questions with a partne Use the underlined vocabulary in your answers.

- 1. What is your daily schedule on Mondays? Tell the times and activities.
- 2. Talk about the placement test you took in your language school. How long was it? How many parts did it have? Which part was the most difficult? If your school doesn't have a placement test, who decided your English level?
- 3. Discuss what type of information you might hear: at an orientation for first-year students at a college or university. at an orientation for a group of tourists visiting your hometown or city. at an orientation for parents before the first day of kindergarten.
- 4. What kinds of facilities does your school have? Are they free or do you have to pay to use them? What new facilities would you like your school to add?
- 5. What is necessary to be a good advisor? At your school, who is a good advisor to you? How does she or he help you?



Strategies for Better Listening and Speaking

(TOEFL® IST)

Focus on Testing

Getting Meaning from Context

If you don't understand everything that English speakers say, use your guessing ability. How?

- Listen to clues, or signals, that help you guess.
- Words that you already know can be clues to new words.
- Grammar, stress, and intonation can also be clues to meaning.

Read the sentence below. Can you guess the meaning of the new word from all the other words you know?

You can guess that prerequisite means something that is necessary before something else.

Many tests such as the TOEFL® iBT measure your academic listening and speaking abilities. This activity, and others in the book, will develop your social and academic communication abilities, and provide a foundation for success on a variety of standardized tests.



Using Context Clues Listen to a conversation between Bruce, Peter, and Peter's new classmate, Kenji.

- 1. The conversation is in five parts. Listen to the beginning of each part. Then listen to the question.
- 2. Stop the recording after the question and choose the best answer to each question.
- 3. In the Clues column, write the words that helped you choose your answer.
- Start the recording again. Listen to the last part of each conversation to hear the correct answer.

^{*} TOEFL is a registered trademark of Education Testing Service (ETS). This publication is not endorsed or approved by ETS.

Answers	Clues
1. A in class	cheese, pepperoni, mushrooms,
8 at the student orientation	hungry, medium, large
c at a pizza restaurant	• •
2. A testing advisor	
B chemistry professor	
© teaching assistant	
3. (A) It's different from Japan.	
B It's a terrible place.	
© It's similar to Japan.	
4. (A) go to the tennis courts between	
8 a.m. and 5 p.m.	:
B telephone between 8 A.M. and 5 P.M.	
© pay between \$5 and \$8	
5. A reserve a tennis court	
B play tennis together	
© go to class together	
the control of the second second of the second	Haranda kan 1980 (1984) Angalanda (1984) Angalanda (1984) Angalanda (1984) Angalanda (1984) Angalanda (1984)

Sevioul Mat

UNDERSTANDING BODY LANGUAGE

In face-to-face situations, body language—gestures, facial expressions, and eye contact—can give you important clues to help you understand the speaker.



Using Body Language Now discuss what the gestures on the next page meanin different cultures.

1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



· 6.



7.



Use body language to show the following situations.

- 1. You don't know the answer to the question.
- 2. You think that the class is boring.
- 3. You can't hear what someone is saying.
- 4. Someone on the phone is talking too much.



Real-World Tasks: Telephone Messages



Listening to Telephone Messages When Peter and Kenji cannot answer their phone, people leave messages on their voice mail. Listen to each message. Write the important information in the spaces below. Then, compare your notes with a partner

Example

WHILE YOU WERE OUT
To: Kenji
From: Dr. Brown's office
Message: Can you change your
appointment to Wednesday
at 2:00? Dr. Brown can't see you
on Tuesday.
Phone Number: <u>555-0162</u>
, note number.

1.	WHILE YOU WERE OUT	2.	WHILE YOU WERE OUT
	То:	10.00 MAN AND 10	То:
	From:		From:
	Message:		Message:

	Phone Number:	· COLON SANAMA	Phone Number:

WHILE YOU WERE OUT	4. WHILE YOU WERE OF
	To:
m;	From:
essage:	Message:
<u></u>	
one Number:	Phone Number:
	- <u> </u>
	- <u> </u>
WHILE YOU WERE OUT	6. WHILE YOU WERE O
WHILE YOU WERE OUT	6. WHILE YOU WERE O
WHILE YOU WERE OUT	6. WHILE YOU WERE O
WHILE YOU WERE OUT	6. WHILE YOU WERE O
WHILE YOU WERE OUT	6. WHILE YOU WERE OF



Role-Play: Giving Telephone Messages Work with a partner. Pretend you are Peter and Kenji. Look at your notes on pages 18 and 19. Take turns giving each other the messages.

Example

Kenji: Did I get any messages?

Peter: Yeah, Dr. Brown's office called. **Kenji:** Oh, really? What did they say?

Peter: They want to change your appointment from Tuesday to Wednesday.

Kenji: Did they leave a phone number?

Peter: Uh-huh. It's 555-0162.

Strategy

Telephone Numbers

When saying telephone numbers, English speakers will understand you better if you:

- pause after the area code.
- pause after the first three numbers, and between the next two pairs of numbers.
- raise your voice before every pause.
- lower your voice at the end.

Example

area code (310) 555-0162: three-one-zero ^ five-five ^ zero-one ^ six-two



Calling for Information Bruce calls the college about a parking permit and talks to an administrative assistant. Listen to his conversation and complete the application form.

PARKING PERMIT APPLICATION				
	FABER COLLEGE			
Name:	First	Middle initial		
Address:				
Phone:				
Car:Make	Model	Year		
License plate:		 ,		
Fall Semester	Request handic	ар		
Spring Semester	parking space			
☐ All year	Amount enclosed \$			



Role-Play Compare your application form with a partner. Then role-play Bruce and the administrative assistant discussing parking permits. Pronounce numbers carefully!

Self-Assessment Log Check the words you learned in this chapter. Verbs Expressions Nouns □ call me advisor □ came over (come over) □ facilities move into No kidding! orientation □ sound placement test stop by schedule take Check the things you did in this chapter. How well can you do each one? Very well Fairly well Not very well I can listen to and practice stress and reductions. 0 Ο. **□** I can listen to and pronounce -s endings. O. I can introduce myself and others. 0 I can take notes on a presentation. a I can summarize my notes. a ū I can guess meanings from context. Ü ü I can understand and talk about body language. I can listen to and give telephone messages. a \Box Write about what you did in this chapter.

In this chapter,

I learned ______

l liked ______

Grander Etalisa

Experiencing Nature

Conversation:

Vacation Plans

Story:

Camping

Getting Meaning from Context: Talking About Seasons

Real-World Tasks:

Listening to a Weather Forecast

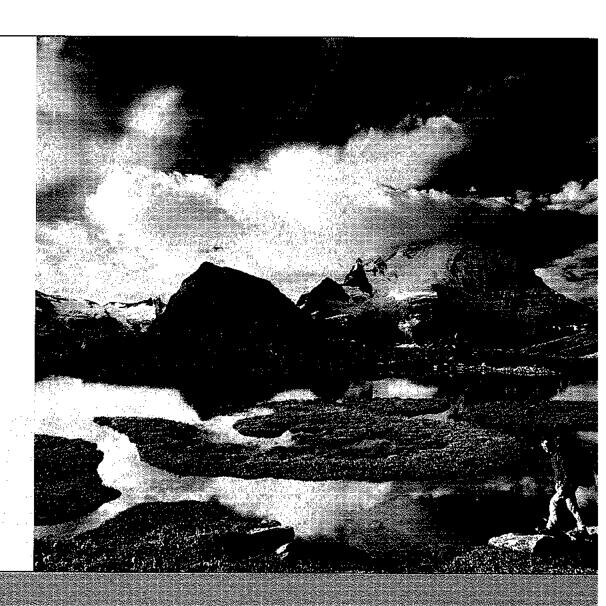
for In every walk with nature, one receives far more than he seeks. 22

> ---John Mui American naturalist (1838-1914



Connecting to the Topic

- Look at the photo. What do you see? Would you like to be in this place? Why or why not?
- 2. What kinds of outdoor activities do you enjoy?
- 3 What is your favorite kind of weather? Why?

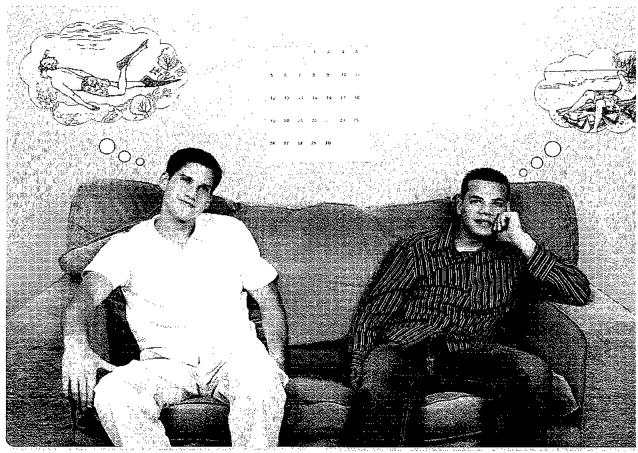




Conversation: Vacation Plans



Prelistening Questions Look at the photo. Answer the questions with a partner.



▲ Jack and Peter

- 1. What are Jack and Peter thinking about?
- 2. Describe your perfect outdoor vacation. Where would you go? What would you do there?



Previewing Vocabulary Listen to these words and phrases from the conversation. Complete the sentences with these words and phrases.

louns	Verb	Adjectives	Expressions
hance o	get a tar	ı extra	how come
legrees		freezing	it's raining cats and dogs
veather f	orecast	sick of (verb $+-in$	ig)
1. A: V	ow	you're all wet?	
	ecause forgot my umbrella.		outside, and
2. In the	e summer, I love to l	ie in the sun and	
3. The v	veather report in the	e newspaper says there	's a 90 percent
		snow tomo	rrow. Be sure to dress warm.
4. It's 20)	Celsius* outside. Ye	ou don't need a sweater.
	are we going to get been on the road fo		
	id you hear the	driving.	G PP
fc	r tomorrow on the r	news?	
	s. It's going to be su perfect day for the	7 77 4300	
7. A: W	hy don't you turn o	n the heater?	
It	s	in this	
re	om!		
	s broken. We'll have ır coats tonight.		ining cats and dogs.
		- ICS IA	ning cats and dogs.





AUSTON

8. Do you have an _

- Listening for Main Ideas Jack, Peter, and Bruce are talking about weather and vacations. Close your book as you listen. Prepare to answer these questions.
- 1. Why does Peter want to go on vacation soon?
- 2. Where does Bruce prefer to go on vacation?
- 3. What do Jack and Peter agree about?

jacket? I forgot mine at home.

Compare and discuss your answers with a partner.

^{*}Equal to about 68° Fahrenheit.

	-
D	(d)

Listening for Details Listen again if necessary. Write T if a statement is true and F if it is false.

- _____ 1. It is almost the end of the school year.
- _____ **2.** Jack has never tried skiing.

a hundred times.

___ 3. The weather isn't going to be better tomorrow.

图像的现代



Listening for Stressed Words Listen to the conversation again. Some of the stressed words are missing. During each pause, repeat the phrase or sentence. Then fil in the blanks with words you hear.

Culture Note

In North America, the school year begins in Saptember, and there is a long vacation in December called "winter break." In most cases, school starts again after the New Year.

Peter:	Wow, Look, It's raining	g cats and dogs	:! I
		this weather. V	Vhen does winter
		start?	
Jack:	Winter break? It's only	у	<i>.</i>
Peter:	I know, but I'm		of studying. I want to go someplace
		and lie on the	for a week.
	Someplace where it's		and dry. Florida or Hawaii,
	maybe?		
Jack:	Yeah. Where we can g	o	and snorkeling and get a
	great	, Now	my idea of a
	perfect vacation.		
Bruce:	Not mine. I can't swin	a very well, and	l Ilike lying in
	the		
Peter:	Oh, yeah? How come?	?	
Bruce:	: 1 don't know, I just pro	efer the	, especially in winter.
	lsnowboarding. In fact, I'm		
	to go to Bear Mountai	n with some fri	iends in
	you want to	?	
Jack:	No thanks. I went the	re	year. I was
		the whole time	e. Anyway, I don't know how to
		very well. Last	year Iabout

	Peter, how about you?		
Peter:	Sorry, I'm like Jack. I don't want t	o go w	here it's
	below 70		
Jack:	By the way, what's the	forecast for tomo	prrow?
Bruce:	The as toda	y, col	d, and a
	90 percent	of rain.	
Jack:	Oh, no! I m;	y umbrella at the	·
Bruce:	You can min	ne. Pve got an	one.
Now read correctly.	I the conversation with two other cla	assmates. Practice stressing w	/ords
Raday	What is the same of the same o		
sentence: and reduc	nparing Unreduced and Redu s come from the conversation. Lister ced pronunciation. Repeat both form	n for the difference between u	
Unreduc	ced Pronunciation	Reduced Pronunciation	*
1. It's ra	dining cats and dogs.	It's raining cats <u>'n'</u> dogs.	
2. I war	nt to go someplace warm.	I <u>wanna</u> go someplace war	m.
3. We c	an swim,	We <u>kin</u> swim.	
4. Im g	oing to go to Bear Mountain.	I'm <u>gonna</u> go <u>ta</u> Bear Mour	ntain.
5. How	about you?	How bouchu?	
6. I don	't want to go.	I <u>donwarna</u> go.	
reduced p write the	ening for Reductions Listen to pronunciations of some words. Repe- unreduced forms of the missing wor	at each sentence during the p	
	Hi, Bruce. Hi, Peter.		
	and Peter: Hey, Jack.		
Bruce:	What's happening?		
Jack:	I'm going to the campus recreation	n center.	

in the sun.

Bruce: What are you ______ do there?

Jack: Well, it's a nice day. We ______swim _____ lie

 $[\]ensuremath{^{\circ}}$ Note: The underlined forms are not acceptable spellings in written English.

Bruce: Thanks, but I I'm too tired.	go
Jack: How	, Peter?
Peter: I can't. I've	stay at home
study. Ma	aybe tomorrow.
With a partner, repeat the dialogue. Pra	ctice reduced pronunciation.

4 (1 m = 1 m + 1 m) = 1 (1 m) =



Using Vocabulary Discuss the following questions with a partner, Use the underlined vocabulary in your answers.

- 1. When you are sick of studying, what do you do to relax?
- 2. In your hometown, what is the coldest temperature, and what is the hottest temperature? (Use the word degrees in your answer.)
- 3. What is a safe way to get a tan?
- 4. Are you afraid to drive if it's raining cats and dogs? How much extra time do you give yourself when you drive in bad weather?
- 5. What is the chance of rain tomorrow in the area where you live?
- 6. What's the best place to get the weather forecast: TV, newspaper, or Internet?
- 7. Which is worse for you: to be freezing or to be too hot?

Pronunciation



CAN OR CAN'T

Notice the difference between the pronunciations of *can* and *can't* in the following sentences.

| can meet you tomorrow.

I can't meet you tomorrow.

Can is unstressed, so the vowel is reduced. It sounds like "kin." Stress only the main verb:

can meet.

Can't is stressed, so the vowel is not reduced. Stress both can't and the main verb:

can't meet.



Distinguishing Between Can and Can't Listen and repeat each statement. Circle Can if the statement is affirmative and Can't if the statement is negative.

1. Can Can't. **6.** Can Can't 2. Can Can't **7.** Can Can't **3**. Can Can't 8. Can Can't **4.** Can Can't **9**. Can Can't **5.** Can Can't **10**. Can Can't

Using Language Functions

TALKING ABOUT ABILITIES

You can use can and can't to talk about abilities.

Example Bruce can ski, but he can't swim.

Here are some other expressions for talking about what you can and can't do:

I'm (not) able to (+ verb)

I (don't) know how to (+ verb)

I wish I could (+ verb)

I'm (not) good at (+ verb + -ing)

I'm (not) really good at (+ verb + -ing)

Strategy

Graphic Organizer: T-Chart

T-charts can help you organize and compare two different sides of a topic. For example:

- You can compare the advantages and disadvantages of an idea to help you make a decision.
- You can compare facts and opinions.
- You can list the strengths and weaknesses of an idea or of something you read or listen to.

Advantages	Disadvantages



Talking About Abilities Complete this chart. Then tell a partner about your abilities. Use can, can't, and the expressions from the list on page 29.

Abilities		
Things I Am Good At	Things I Am Not Good At	
1.	1.	
2.	2.	
3.	3.	
4.	4.	

Part 2

Story: Camping



- Prelistening Questions You will hear a story about camping. Before you lister answer these questions with a partner.
 - 1. Have you ever gone camping? Tell about this experience. Where did you go? When? With whom?
 - 2. Why do many people enjoy camping?
 - 3. What unpleasant or dangerous things can happen while camping?



Previewing Vocabulary Listen to the underlined words and phrases. You will hear the underlined words and phrases in a story. Write the letter of the correct definition beside each sentence.

Sentences	Definitions
1 The view at the top of the mountain wa incredible. The sunset was orange and p	
2 Please clean your <u>muddy</u> shoes before come inside the house.	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
3 When I'm sick of being in the city, I go in the mountains.	**
4 After the rain stopped, the sky was <u>clear</u> and sunny.	d. unbelievable; very surprising
5 After six months in another country, I couldn't wait to see my family again.	e. covered with wet earth
6 Don't be scared of the dog; she is very sweet and gentle.	f. not cloudy





Listening for Main Ideas A husband and his wife are checking into a motel. They tell the manager a very unusual story. As you listen, answer these questions.

- 1. What starts all of the trouble?
- **2.** What happens to the couple's clothes?



Taking Notes on Specific Information Listen to the story again. Fill in the missing key information in the notes below. Remember:

- Don't try to write everything you hear. Write the important information only.
- Don't write complete sentences; write key words only.



An unexpected visitor

L	decided to go			
2.	weather was		-	
3.	after 1/2 hr started to			
4.	hiked back to		to change	
5.	couldn't find			
6	went back			
7.	saw	_wearing		
8.	felt			
9.	problem now:		-	



5 Summarizing Ideas

- Compare your notes with a partner. Summarize the story in your own words. As you speak, look at your notes to help you remember.
- In groups of three, play the roles of the husband, his wife, and the hotel manager from the story. Don't read the script. Use your notes to help you remember the story.



Reviewing Vocabulary Talk about the picture below. Use the new vocabulary as you describe what is happening.

Noun	Adjectives	Expression
hiking	clear	I can't wait to
	incredible	
	muddy	
	scared	



* Two hikers



Fact or Fiction Game

- Tell the class about a dangerous, unusual, or exciting experience that you had in nature. Your teacher will give you a card. If the card says "Fact," you must tell a tru story. If the card says "Fiction," tell an imaginary story, but make it sound real.
- 2. After each story, the class will take a vote: how many people think the story was fact? How many think it was fiction? See which student in your class is the best storyteller—or the most creative!



Culture Note

North America has many large, beautiful national parks. It is illegal to leave garbage in a park. It is also illegal to take plants or animals out of a park. Parks and camping areas always have rangers. Their job is to protect the parks and help park visitors.

- Role-Play Discuss the following questions.
- 1. What does the sign in the photo mean? Why do you think camping areas and parks have signs like this?
- 2. Does your country have strong laws against littering (throwing paper and garbage on the ground or street)? Why do you think some countries have strong laws against littering? How does litter affect the environment?



A common sign in U.S. parks

Look at the pictures and read the description of the situation. In groups of three (George, Lou, and Rick), role-play the situation. The following expressions may help you express your ideas:

Explaining Rules

You need to . . .

It's against the rules to . . .

You shouldn't . . .

You're not allowed to . . .

The state of the s

George and Lou are brothers. They have just spent a wonderful weekend camping. Now they're getting ready to leave, but they are leaving their campsite dirty and full of trash. Rick is a park ranger. He stops the brothers to explain their responsibilities and to ask them to clean up. Make up your own ending.





Strategies for Better Listening and Speaking

Genne Weshins kong yonkeks



Prelistening Discussion Before you listen, talk about seasons with a partner.









- 1. Identify the seasons in the photos (winter, spring, summer, or fall) and describe the weather in each one.
- 2. Do you know of any countries that don't have four seasons? Describe the weather in those countries.

(TOEFL® IBT)

Focus on Testing



Using Context Clues

Many tests such as the TOEFL® iBT measure your academic listening and speaking abilities. This activity, and others in the book, will develop your social and academic communication abilities, and provide a foundation for success on a variety of standardized tests. You are going to hear five conversations about seasons. As you listen to each conversation, write *winter*, *spring*, *summer*, or *fall* in the **Seasons** column. After each conversation, stop the recording and write the words that helped you choose the season. Compare your answers and clues with a partner.

Seasons 1.	Clues
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	



- Talking About Seasons Talk with a partner about seasons in New York. Work in pairs: Student A and Student B. Follow the instructions below.
 - 1. Student A, look at page 200, and Student B, look at page 204.
 - 2. Ask your partner questions about the missing information in your chart.
 - **3.** Write your partner's answers in the blank spaces on your chart. When you finish, your charts should match.

Examples

When is summer? Or, what are the summer months? What's the weather like in the spring?

Fart 4

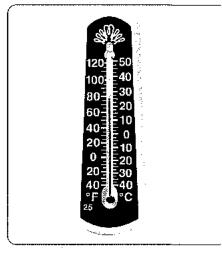
Real-World Tasks: Weather



Veather reports often say that the temperature is "in the 30s" (10s, 50s, 10s). "In the 30s" means that the temperature is anywhere item con 30 and 50 degrees.

Listening for Temperatures
Listen to these conversations about the
weather. Circle the temperatures you hear.

1 . 19	95	99
2 . 80	18	8
3 . 13	30	30s
4 . 14	40	44
5. 103	130	133
6. 30s	30	13
7. –13	30	3
8. 70	70s	17



▲ A thermometer

Talking About Temperatures

Your teacher will give each student the name of a city. Find today's temperatures around the world in a newspaper or on the Internet. Tell the class today's temperature: in the city your teacher gives you.

Example

Teacher: Sydney, Australia

Student: The high temperature will be 75 degrees Fahrenheit.

The low temperature will be 52.

Today's average temperatures will be in the 70s.



Previewing Vocabulary Listen to the underlined words and phrases. You will hear the underlined words in a weather forecast. Write the letter of the correct definition heside each sentence

definition beside each sentence.				
Sentences	Definitions			
1 Take an umbrella. There's a char	nce a. clear, not rainy			
of showers later. 2 Take a sweater. It's chilly outside	b. short periods of e. rain			
3 The overnight temperature will to	oe c. during the night			
20 degrees. 4 The sky is partly cloudy. It's not good day for the beach.	d. clear in some a places and cloudy in others			
5 The weather forecast says we can expect <u>fair skies</u> this weekend. Let's go fishing!	n e. a little cold			



Listening to a Weather Forecast Bruce is watching the weather forecast. Listen to the report and use the chart to take notes about the weekend weather.



▲ A TV reporter giving a weather forecast

Sky: (Cloudy? Fair?)	Fiday	Saturelay	Sunday	Monday
Temperature				
High:				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Low:				-
Rain: (Yes? No?)				

Work in groups of four. Each student summarizes the information for one day.

Example

Student 1: On Friday it will be partly cloudy with showers during the night.

Student 2: On Saturday . . .

Andrewsking the property of the contraction of the

EXPRESSIONS FOR TALKING ABOUT ACTIVITIES YOU LIKE AND DISLIKE

Likes	Dislikes
I like/love (to + verb/verb + -ing).	I don't like/dislike/hate (to + verb/verb + -ing).
I enjoy (verb + -ing).	I'm not crazy about (noun).
It's OK/all right/fun/good /great/wonderful.	I don't care for (noun).
I'm crazy about (noun).	It's awful/terrible.
	I can't stand it.



Interview Interview a partner about activities he or she likes or dislikes in each season. Complete the chart with your partner's answers.

Example

You ask:

What do you like to do in the (summer)?

What's your favorite (winter) sport?

What activities do you dislike in (winter)?

Your partner answers: I like waterskiing in the summer.

My favorite winter "sport" is watching television!

I hate driving in the snow, but I enjoy making a snowma

	Fall	Winter	Spring	Summer
Sports				
Other Activities (likes)				
-				
Other Activities (dislikes)				
,7%8,444	<u> </u>			

Self-Assessment Log Check the words you learned in this chapter. **Verbs** Adjectives Expressions Nouns □ chilly □ couldn't wait chance of get a tan □ degrees □ clear (can't wait) in how come □ fair skies □ extra freezing ☐ It's raining cats and dogs □ fall □ incredible □ hiking □ muddy □ showers □ spring overnight □ partly cloudy □ summer □ weather forecast □ scared □ winter □ sick of (verb + -ing) Check the things you did in this chapter. How well can you do each one? Very well Fairly well Not very well I can listen to and practice stress and reductions. I can hear the difference between can and can't. I can talk about my abilities. ũ Ġ. \Box I can take notes on a story. I can summarize my notes. O. \Box \Box I can guess meanings from context. \Box • I can talk about weather. \Box I can talk about what I like to do. \Box \Box Write about what you learned and liked in this chapter. In this chapter,

Hearned _____

I liked _____

Living to Eat, or **Eating to Live?**

Conversation:

Shopping for Food

Advice Show:

Healthy Eating

Getting Meaning from Context: In a Restaurant

Real-World Tasks:

Following Recipes

66 Tomatoes and oregano make it Italian; tarragon makes it French. Sour cream makes it Russian: lemon and cinnamon make it Greek. Soy sauce makes it Chinese; garlic makes it good.

> -Alice May Broc. American author (1941-



Connecting to the Topic

- Look at the photo. What are the people doing? What is their relationship to one another?
- 2 What are some of your favorite things to eat when you visit your family?
- 3 Eating lots of vegetables is healthy. What are three other healthy eating habits?





Conversation: Shopping for Food



Prelistening Questions Look at the photo. Answer the questions with a partner.



Andrew and his wife, Nancy at the supermarket

- **1.** The supermarket in the picture has an "express line." What do you think this means?
- **2.** Andrew and Nancy are at the front of the line. What are they buying? What mistake do they make?



Previewing Vocabulary Listen to these words and phrases from the conversation. Then complete the sentences with the words and phrases.

Nouns aisle	produce	Verb take checks	Expression in line
groceries pound ¹	quart ² tofu ³		
1. Cherries are	pretty cheap no	ow. They cost \$1.89 a _	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
2. My son likes	milk a lot. He d	rinks a	of milk every day.
3. You can pay v	vith cash or a cr	redit card, but this mar	ket doesn't
4. I hate frozen	or canned vege	tables and fruit. I only	eat fresh
5. I just spent \$ really expens 6. A: Excuse m	sive here!		time I spent \$85.00. Food i
7 . The market v		ed. I had to wait	for
8. People who d	lon't eat meat o	ften cook with	•
ietskam.			
		Andrew and Nancy ar you listen. Prepare to ar	e grocery shopping at a swer these questions.
1. What are And	drew and Nancy	discussing?	
2. Why is Andre	w buying so m	uch food?	
3. Why can't An	drew and Nano	y use the express line	?
Compare and disc	uss your answer	rs with a partner.	
Listening for and F if it is false.	or Details List	en again if necessary. W	rite T if a statement is true
1. Andrev	v forgot to get t	ofu.	
2. Nancy	wants Andrew	to buy more ice cream	l .
3. Strawb	erries cost \$2.8	39.	

^{1 2.2} pounds equal one kilogram.

2 A quart is equal to about a liter.

3 Tofu is a soft white food made from soy beans, popular in Asian cooking.

24433



Listening for Stressed Words Listen to the conversation again. Some of the stressed words are missing. During each pause, repeat the phrase or sentence. Then fi in the blanks with words you hear.

Andrew:	Well, I got a few grocer	ies that	on the list.
Nancy:	I can	that! We're	shopping
	for an	, you know.	
Andrew:	I	_ do this when I'm hungry	•
Nancy:	Well, let's see what you	ı he	ere.
Andrew:	Some nice, fresha pound.	for only	
Nancy:	Well, that's fine. They	always have nice	here. Bı
		do you have all these	?
Andrew:	Don't you	them?	
Nancy:		ope you got a	of
Andrew:	I think I the Asian foods, again		with
Nancy:	Aisle		
Andrew:	I'll go get it.		
Nancy:	_	—this	you got looks really
Andrew:		It's on	for just
3.7		-	
Nancy:		ice cream? We already ha	
		. Why don't you put it righ	
Cashier:		, Miss; this is the	
		got more than	
		here.	
Now read th	e conversation with two	other classmates. Practice	stressing words correct



Comparing Unreduced and Reduced Pronunciation The following sentences come from the conversation. Listen for the difference between unreduced and reduced pronunciation. Repeat both forms after the speaker.

Unreduced Pronunciation	Reduced Pronunciation*	
1. Let's see what you have here.	Let's see whatcha have here.	
2. Why do you have all these cookies	Why d'ya have all these cookies?	
3. Don't you like them?	Dontcha like 'em?	
4. I don't know.	I dunno.	



Listening for Reductions Listen to the following sentences. You'll hear the reduced pronunciations of some words. Repeat each sentence during the pause. Then write the unreduced forms of the missing words in the blanks.

Customer:	Waiter?
Server:	Yes, sir. Do you know want?
Customer:	have the spaghetti with
	mushroom sauce tonight?
Server:	Yes, we do.
Customer:	Well, are the mushrooms fresh or canned?
Server:	They're fresh, and the sauce has
	them.
Customer:	Great, I'll have that.
Server:	want something to drink?
Customer:	I Why
	recommend something?
Server:	How about some nice Italian mineral water?
With a partner, pronunciation.	repeat the sentences for pronunciation practice. Practice reduced

^{*} Note: The underlined forms are not acceptable spellings in written English.

MATERIAL COLOR SERVICE



Using Vocabulary Discuss the following questions with a partner. Use the underlined vocabulary in your answers.

- 1. Who shops for groceries in your family? How often?
- 2. What kinds of produce do you buy every week?
- **3.** How much does a gallon (four <u>quarts</u> = about 4 liters) of gasoline cost right now? Recently, has this price gone up, gone down, or stayed the same?
- **4.** Which of the following places do you think usually <u>take checks</u>: restaurants, supermarkets, department stores, car dealers, or movie theaters?
- **5.** In your favorite food market, how many aisles are there?
- **6.** About how many <u>pounds</u> (1 pound = about 1/2 kilogram) of groceries can you carry?
- 7. How do you feel when you have to stand in line for a long time?

Pronunciation



TEENS OR TENS?

Notice the differences in stress between the following pairs of words. In the numbers 13 to 19, be sure to stress the "-teen" ending. For 20, 30, 40, etc., to 90, stress the first syllable only. Listen.

ŧ	ſ
thirteen	thirty
ſ	1
fourteen	forty
,	r
fifteen	fifty
,	1
sixteen	sixty
	1
seventeen	seventy
1	F
eighteen	eighty
r	1
nineteen	ninety

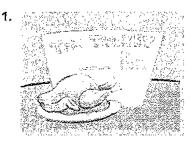


Distinguishing Between Teens and Tens Listen to the sentences and circle the number you hear.

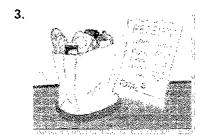
1 . 13	30	5. 17	70
2 . 14	40	6. 18	30
3 . 15	50	7. 19	90
4. 16	60		

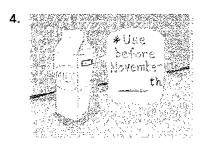


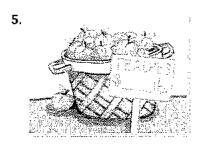
Listening for Teens and Tens Listen to these sentences. Write the number you hear on the blank line in each picture.

























Interview Use count and noncount nouns as you interview people about food and shopping habits.

Language Tip

Use **noncount nouns** to talk about food in a general way:

i like ice cream. Fil have cereal. Stoak is expensive.

Use quantity words or container names to talk about specific amounts of food:

a quart (or gallon) of ice cream a box of cereal

a pound of steak

- 1. Work in groups of three. Write your teacher's name and the names of your group members in the spaces at the top of the chart below.
- 2. Ask questions with "How much" or "How many" and the words on the left side of the chart. Look at the example (Stacy).

Example

- A: How much coffee do you drink every day?
- **B**: Two cups a day.
- A: How many candy bars do you buy a week?
- B: Two a week.
- Practice asking your teacher the questions and write his or her answers on the chart.
 - Use the present tense.
 - Pay attention to count and noncount nouns.
 - Add time expressions as needed. For example, "How much coffee do you drink every week?"
- **4.** Take turns asking your group members the questions and write their answers on the chart.

Time Expressions you can use in the questions or answers:

each day every week a month

Automorphism (Automorphism) (Automorphism)

Questions		Teacher	Name	Name
	Stacy			
coffee/drink	2 cups a day		,	
water/drink	6 glasses a day			
candy/buy	2			
food/eat/breakfast	Only a little			
money/spend/groceries	About 30 dollars			
gasoline/buy	About 15 gallons			
bananas/eat	3 or 4			
times/eat/restaurants	8 or 9			

Part 2

Advice Show: Healthy Eating

Beioke voor Bisker



Prelistening Questions In the United States, people learn that they should eat food from the four major food groups: grains (wheat, corn, rice, etc.), fruits and vegetables, dairy (milk, cheese, yogurt, etc.), and protein (meat, fish, beans, nuts, eggs, etc.). Before you listen, answer these questions with a partner.



- 1. Talk about the photo. Are these young men "healthy" eaters?
- 2. Do you eat like these young men? For example, do you like "junk food"? If yes, what is your favorite type? If not, what kinds of food do you like to eat?
- **3.** Do you ever eat canned or frozen food? Why or why not? If you *do* eat such foods, what are some examples?
- 4. Have you ever changed your eating habits (what, how much, or when you eat)? Explain how, and why, you changed.

Definitions





Previewing Vocabulary You will hear the underlined words below on a radio advice show. Listen to the underlined words. Then write the letter of the correct definition beside each sentence.

Sentences

Sentences		D	ennuons
1	Milk is a good source of calcium.	a.	weakening, rotting
2	We can get most <u>vitamins and</u> <u>minerals</u> from	b.	a unit for measuring the energy value of food
	food. We don't have to take pills.	c.	to reduce or have less of (something)
3	If you start to <u>gain</u> weight, you are probably eating more food than your body needs.	d.	a food substance that comes from plants and that we need for digestion
4	If you skip breakfast, you'll be really hungry by lunchtime.	e.	helpful elements in many foods that are used by our
5	Dentists try to teach children good brushing and eating habits so they		bodies to grow and stay healthy
6	won't get tooth <u>decay</u> . The doctor told John to <u>cut down on</u>	f.	not to do or have something
7	coffee, to help him sleep better. A piece of bread has about 75 <u>calories</u> .	g.	a place where something comes from
8	Fiber helps food move through our	h.	to increase





Listening for Wain Ideas Listen to advice from a radio show called, "Eating Right!" As you listen, answer this question:

What are some important things you can do to eat right?



Taking Notes on Specific Information Listen again. This time, complete the chart with Bob and Pam's advice. Try to catch as many details as you can.

Things You Should Eat	Reasons	Examples
vegetables	fiber,	carrots,
Things You Shouldn't Eat or Drink	Reasons	Examples



Summarizing Ideas

 Compare notes with a partner. Together, summarize in complete sentences the advice you heard. Include reasons and examples. Tell your partner if you have tried any of these ideas for healthy eating.

Example

You should eat a carrot for a snack because it's a vegetable that has . . .

2. With your class, make a list on the board of additional dos and don'ts about health eating. Tell the class which ones you have tried and if they worked well.



- Using Vocabulary Discuss the following questions with a partner. Use the underlined vocabulary in your answers.
 - 1. Which meal are you least likely to <u>skip</u>, and which meal are you most likely to skip? Why?
 - 2. Bodybuilders, football players, and other athletes often try to gain weight and strength. What specific types of food would you suggest for these people to eat?
- **3.** What do you eat or drink that you know may be bad for your teeth? Would you consider stopping? Would you <u>cut down on</u> these things? How do you try to avoid tooth decay?
- **4.** Do you ever think about the number of <u>calories</u> in certain foods you eat? Do you read food labels? Why, or why not?
- **5.** Which of your favorite foods do you think are the best <u>sources</u> of <u>vitamins</u> and minerals?
- 6. What kinds of foods do you eat to get fiber in your diet?

Figural in Sure 7



Comparing Eating Habits "Eating habits" are your eating customs. They include when, where, and what you eat. Take notes in the chart below. Then use the chart to talk about differences between your eating habits at home and the way you eat when you travel somewhere.

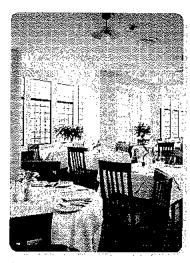
	When I'm at Home	When I Travel
what you eat for breakfast, lunch, and dinner	l eat rice for breakfast.	l eat cereal for breakfast.
2. the time and size of meals and snacks		
3. the price of food		
4. restaurants		
5. table manners		



Strategies for Better Listening and Speaking

Getting Meaning from Context

Prelistening Questions Look at the photos. Each one shows a different kind ceating place. Before you listen, answer the questions on page 53 with a partner.



▲ A restaurant



A A cafeteria



A fast food restaurant



A diner

- 1. What kind of food does each place serve?
- 2. Who serves the food in each place?
- 3. Which one is probably the most expensive? The cheapest?
- 4. When would you choose to eat in each kind of place?
- 5. Which of these kinds of places have you tried?
- 6. What are some other types of places to eat?

TOEFL® IBT

Focus on Testing



Using Context Clues

Many tests such as the TOEFL® iBT measure your academic listening and speaking abilities. This activity, and others in the book, will develop your social and academic communication abilities, and provide a foundation for success on a variety of standardized tests. You will hear four conversations about places to eat.

- 1. Listen to the beginning of each conversation.
- **2.** Listen to the question for each conversation. Stop the recording and choose the best answer to each question.
- 3. In the Clues column, write the words that helped you choose your answer.
- 4. Listen to the last part of each conversation to hear the correct answer.

Answers. Ciues 1. A coffee shop B cafeteria C nice restaurant 2. A fast-food place B diner C expensive restaurant 3. A cafeteria B coffeehouse C fast-food place 4. A nice restaurant B cafeteria C fast-food place

ORDERING IN A RESTAURANT

In the United States, you can order dinner à la carte, which means you pay separately for each item. You can also order a complete dinner, which includes a main course (fis meat, or a vegetarian dish), soup or salad, and side dishes (rice, potatoes, or vegetable for one price. Drinks and dessert are usually separate. A "dish" in this context is a serving of cooked food, not a container.

Here is a list of questions and answers that are frequently used in restaurants.

Server	Customer
Taking an order:	Ordering:
Are you ready to order?	I'll have (the beans and rice).
May I take your order?	I'd like (a steak).
Do you want (an appetizer)?	May I please have (a glass of iced tea)?
Would you like (soup) or (salad)?	
Would you prefer (French fries) or (a baked potato)? What would you like (to drink)?	Asking for information:
	Do you have (tofu)?
	What kind of (salad dressing) do you have?
	Does that come with (a vegetable)?



Ordering in a Restaurant A customer is ordering a meal at a nice restaurant Listen to the conversation.

Server: Are you ready to order, ma'am?

Customer: Yes, I am.

Server: What would you like?

Customer: I'd like the grilled salmon dinner.

Server: Would you like soup or salad with that?

Customer: What kind of soup do you have?

Server: We have Japanese miso soup or Italian minestrone.

Customer: I'll have the minestrone.

Server: And would you like potatoes or rice with your salmon? **Customer:** Rice, please. Does the dinner come with a vegetable?

Server: Yes. Would you prefer green beans or broccoli?

Customer: Green beans, please.

Server: What would you like to drink?

Customer: I'd like a glass of iced tea. **Server:** OK, that's minestrone sou

OK, that's minestrone soup, followed by grilled salmon with rice an

green beans, and a glass of iced tea. Would you like an appetizer

while you're waiting?

Customer: No thanks.

Now use the model above to role-play ordering dinner. Sit with a partner. One of you is the server. The other is a customer. Follow the instructions in the boxes below.

Server's instructions

Start by asking the customer, "May I take your order?"

Then take the customer's order for a main course, soup or salad, side dishes, dessert, and a drink.

A CONTROL OF A STATE O

Customer's Instructions

Order the following items from the menu:

a main course

dessert

soup or salad

a drink

a side dish

Ask questions about each course.

For example, "What kind of juice do you have?" "Is the shrimp fresh?"

DINNERMENU

SOUPS

Soup of the day

SALADS

5
•
5
5 d
2
d 5

SIDE ORDERS

* S E1/3
French Fries
French Fries
Mushrooms \$3.50 Covered in cheese sauce 4.25
Mixed Vegetables
Mixed Vegetables

HOUSE SPECIALTIES

All entrees served with your choice of rice, cottage cheese, tossed salad, choice of potato, roll and butter

Ribeye Steak	15.75
Grilled to order Whole Chicken	
Sesame Tofu	
Fantail Shrimp Broiled with butter and lemon, or deep fried	, 17 . 7 -

DESSERTS

Apple pie
Ice Cream
Or your choice of low-fat yogurt

REVERAGES

DF		. \$2.50
Fresh ji	uices	1.20
Cola &	Diet Cola	1.50
Milk		

Part 4 Real-World Tasks: Recipes and Regional Foods

Rander

CD	1, Tr	ack 50	6	

Previewing Vocabulary The following words are used in cooking. Before you

OD I, HACK SO	listen, write the definitions of the words.
	ingredients:
	serve:
	beat:
	melt:
	dip:
	fry:
CD t, Track 51	Taking Notes on a Recipe Tom is teaching Kenji how to cook French toast. Listen to the recipe and take notes in the spaces.
Ingredients:	



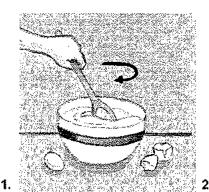
Culture Note

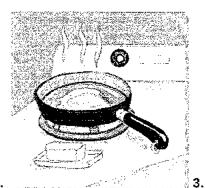
Cooking Measurements

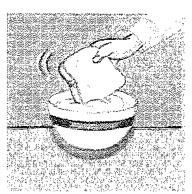
The measurements used in cooking in the U.S. are different from the measurements used in other countries.

For example:

U.S. Other Countries = 5 ml (milliliters) a teaspoon a tablespoon $= 15 \, \text{m}$ a cup $= 240 \, \text{m}!$

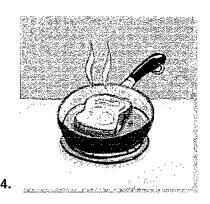


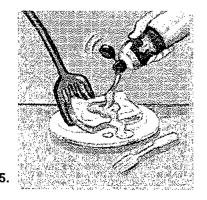




C_{\perp}			٠.
-	61	~	٥.

- 1. Beat _____
- 2. Melt _____
- 3. *Dip* _____





4.	Fry		
5	Servi	2	



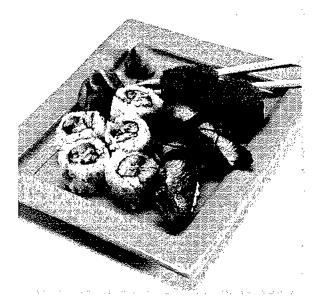
Explaining a Recipe Now, with a partner, use your notes to take turns explaining how to make French toast.

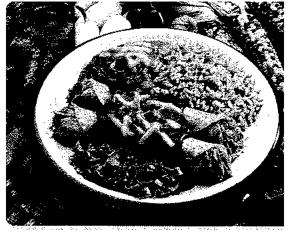
Sharing Recipes Teach the class a simple recipe for a dish that you know how to cook.

- 1. First, list the ingredients.
- 2. Then, describe each step (you may even try to demonstrate). As you speak, the class should take notes on the ingredients and steps.
- 3. Then, choose one or two people to retell the recipe using their notes.



Prelistening Questions Before you listen, talk about "foreign" foods with a partner.





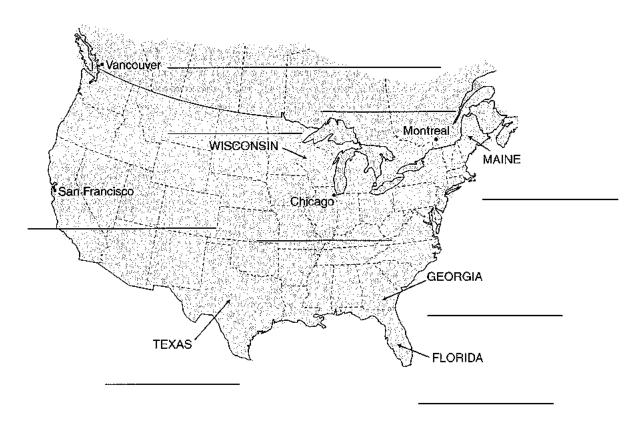
Sushi

Enchiladas with rice and beans

- **1.** Do you know of any regions or places famous for special kinds of food? Give examples, and try to describe those foods.
- **2.** Can you name some "foreign" foods and the countries they come from? Which foreign dishes have you tasted? What is your favorite?
- 3. Have you tried any North American food? What have you tried?



Regional Foods Paula, is a chef. Her friends plan to drive around the United States and Canada. She tells them about foods that are popular in different regions. Look at the map of the United States and Canada. As you hear the name of each food, write it on the map in the place where it is popular.



Discuss these questions with a partner.

- **1.** Have you visited any of the cities or states mentioned by Paula? Did you eat any of the foods mentioned?
- 2. Which of the foods that Paula mentions would you like to try?



Refusing Food Politely

1. Read the situation in the box below and answer the question. Has something like this ever happened to you?

A Korean student, Soo Yun, is having dinner at the home of her American friend, Cathy. Soo Yun has only eaten American food a few times before. During the meal, Cathy's mother offers Soo Yun some unfamiliar food. Soo Yun prefers not to eat it, but she doesn't want to be rude. What can she do?

t farkologi et en nombre lege en der elle progresse et generalen elle elle eller eller et et et et et et en er



Prepare the conversation between Soo Yun and Cathy's mother with a partner.Put on a skit for the class. You can use the expressions below. After each skit, discuss whether or not the food was refused politely.

Offering Food to Someone	Refusing Food Politely
Would you like some?	Thanks, but I'm getting full.
Would you like to try some?	Thanks, but I've had enough.
Why don't you have some (more)?	I'm really full, thanks.
Have some (more)	It's delicious, but I really can't eat any more.
	It looks wonderful, but I can't eat any more.

Self-Assessment Log Check the words you learned in this chapter. Nouns Verbs **Expressions** aisle a pound □ beat □ in line calories produce □ cut down on decay quart □ dip a fiber source □ fry groceries □ tofu □ gain ingredients vitamins and minerals □ melt □ serve □ skip. □ take checks Check the things you did in this chapter. How well can you do each one? Very well Fairly well Not very well I can listen to and practice stress and reductions. ũ I can hear the difference between tens and teens. \Box \Box I can talk about food, recipes, and eating habits. \Box I can take notes on a radio advice show. ם ו Œ I can summarize my notes. \Box Q: I can guess meanings from context. a Loan order food from a menu. Q. Ü Ü Write about what you learned and liked in this chapter. In this chapter, I learned _____

In the Community

for The Giapter

Conversation:

In the City

Conversation:

Comparing Cities and Towns

Getting Meaning from Context: In the Community

Real-World Tasks:

Asking for and Giving Directions

§§ A community is like a ship; everyone ought to be prepared to take the helm.

—Henrik Ibse Norwegian playwright (1828–1906



Connecting to the Topic

- 1 Look at the photo. Where are these people? What are they doing?
- 2 Grocery shopping and doing laundry are examples of errands and chores. What kinds of errands and chores do you usually do each week?
- 3 What do you like and dislike most about your neighborhood?





Conversation: In the City

Saayorayaran distriction



Prelistening Questions Before you listen, talk about your community with a partner.

1. Where do you go to do the following?

get cash

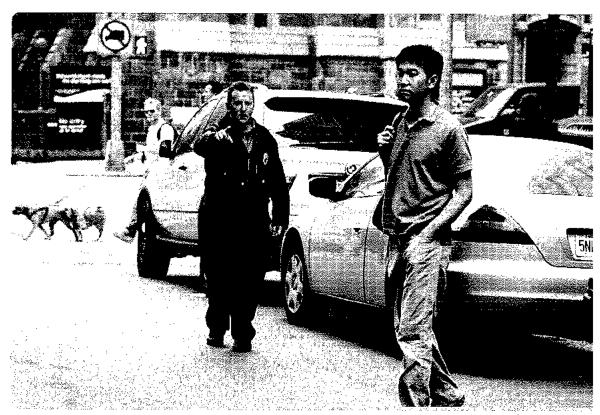
pay a traffic ticket

repair your computer

clean your dirty clothes

buy medicine

- 2. Can you walk to these places from your home? If not, how do you get there?
- **3.** Look at the photo. What is happening? What is the police officer going to do? Why?



A The police officer wants to speak to Kenji.



Previewing Vocabulary Listen to these words and phrases from the conversation. Then complete the sentences below with the words and phrases.

Words and Phrases	Definitions
give (someone) a ride	to take someone in your car
run errands	to take short trips to stores or other places of business
drop off (something/someone)	to take something or someone to a place
dry cleaner	a place where clothes are cleaned with chemicals, not water
laundry	clothes that need to be washed
convenient	comfortable and easy
debit card	a plastic card used to get money from a bank machine
have got to	must
jaywalking	crossing a street illegally

1.	I have to this afternoon. I have to go to the bank, mail a package, and go grocery shopping.
2.	Most teenagers don't know how to do; their mothers usually wash their clothes for them.
3.	It's very to have a bus stop in front of my house. I can be at the bus stop in 30 seconds.
4.	My car doesn't work and I need to be at my job in 30 minutes. Can you
	me?
5.	I'm sorry, I can't talk to you right now. My class starts in five minutes.
	I go.
6.	You can't wash your beautiful new jacket in a washing machine. You need to
	take it to the
7.	Most supermarkets let you pay with a credit card or a
8.	David his daughter at school every morning and picks her up every afternoon.
	I got a ticket for yesterday. A police officer stopped me when I crossed in the middle of the street. From now on, I'll cross at the corner.





Listening for Main Ideas Peter and Kenji both plan to go downtown. Close your book as you listen to the conversation. Listen for the answers to these questions.

- 1. What does Kenji ask Peter to do?
- 2. What does Kenji need to do downtown?
- 3. Why is Peter going downtown?

Compare and discuss your answers with a partner.

	Liste and F if it	ening for Details Listen again if necessary. Write $ au$ if a state is false.	ntement is true
	1.	Kenji needs to buy a new computer.	
	2.	Both Peter and Kenji got a ticket.	
	3.	Peter and Kenji can do laundry in their building.	
	Stress		
CD 2, Track 4	stressed	ening for Stressed Words Listen to the conversation agwords are missing. During each pause, repeat the phrase or sonks with words you hear.	
	Kenji:	Peter, are you goingtoday?	
	Peter:	Uh-huh. Why?	
	Kenji:	Can you me a	_? I have to rui
		some	
	Peter:	Where do you need to?	
	Kenji:	Uh, a lot of places. First, I have to go to the	Coul
		you drop me at the Boulevard and Second Avenue?	of King
	Peter:	King and Second? Oh, sure. I know where that is. But	
		are you going to the	? Why
		don't you use the machine on	
	Kenji:	'Cause my card isn't working; I've	
		to get a one.	And the

pick up some ______ there anyway.

in the building?

Peter: Why don't you _____ the ____ room her

_____ is next _____ to the bank. I have to

Kenji:	I'm not picking up laundry. It's dry cleaning. By the way, is there a	
	computer shop near there? I need to drop off my	
	·	
Peter:	Computer? Oh, yeah. There's a Good Buy across	
	the from the bank. They fix computers there.	
Kenji:	Oh, that's So what are you going to do downtown?	
Peter:	I'm going to the I've got to pay a	
	ticket.	
Kenji:	No kidding! I have to pay a ticket, too. I just got a	
	last week.	
Peter:	But, Kenji, you don't	
Kenji:	I know. I got a ticket for!	
Peter:	Really?!	
Kenji:	Yeah. I know it's illegal to cross in the	
	of the street!	
Now read	the conversation with two other classmates. Practice stressing words correctly.	

Reductions



Comparing Unreduced and Reduced Pronunciation The following sentences come from the conversation. Listen for the difference between unreduced and reduced pronunciation. Repeat both forms after the speaker.

Unreduced Pronunciation

Reduced Pronunciation*

1. Can you give me a ride?	Kinya gimme a ride?
2. Where do you need to go?	Where <u>d'ya</u> need <u>ta</u> go?
3. I have to run some errands	I <u>hafta</u> run some errands.
4. I've got to pay a traffic ticket.	I've gotta pay a traffic ticket.
5. Could you drop me off?	Couldja drop me off?
6. A lot of places.	A <u>lotta</u> places.
7. What are you going to do downtown?	What arya gonna do downtown?

^{*} Note: The underlined forms are not acceptable spellings in written English.



Listening for Reductions Listen to the following conversation. You'll hear the reduced pronunciations of some words. Repeat each sentence during the pause. Then write the unreduced forms of the missing words in the blanks.

A:	know where Central Library is?		
B:	Sure. You take Bus number 9.		
A:	walk with me to the bus stop?		
B:	3: I'm sorry. I don't have time 'cause I've do a		
	things.		
A:	Oh. Then just		
	directions to the bus stop?		
B:	kidding? It's right there across the street.		

With a partner, read the conversation. Practice reduced pronunciation.



Reductions Game Imagine that a big storm is coming to your area. You have ten minutes to leave your home and go to a safe place. Follow the steps to tell what yo are going to do:

 Work in a small group. Sit in a circle. The first student says one thing he or she is going to do. Use the reduced forms and the words from the Word Bank section in the box on page 69.

Example

Student 1: I'm gonna rescue my cat.

2. The next student repeats the first student's sentence and then adds his or her owr sentence.

Example

Student 2: She's gonna rescue her cat. And I hafta find my medicine.

The third student repeats the first two sentences and adds his or her own, and so on. Continue around the group until someone can't remember all of the sentences

Example

Student 3: She's gonna rescue her cat. He <u>hasta</u> find his medicine. And I <u>wanna</u> call my brother.

4. The student who can remember all the sentences is the winner.

Reductions

have to	<u>hafta</u>	
has to	hasta	
going to	gonna	
want to	wanna	
got to	gotta	
because	'cause	

Word Bank

Nouns	Verbs
brother/sister	call
clothes	find
family photos	look for
jewelry	rescue
medicine	save
money	take
my cat/dog	turn off the gas
TV	_

Marie Herzeite Bissepter



Using Vocabulary Discuss the following questions with a partner. Use the underlined vocabulary in your answers.

- 1. Do you ever drop anything off anywhere before school or after school? Explain.
- **2.** How do you get to school? Do you drive, take a bus, or does someone $\underline{\text{drop}}$ you off?
- 3. Who does the laundry in your family? When you travel, do you do your own laundry or do you use the hotel's laundry service? Which clothes do you take to a dry cleaner?
- **4.** Name some <u>errands</u> that you have to <u>run</u> this week. What type of transportation will you use to run your errands?
- 5. Is it a good idea to give a stranger a ride? Why or why not?
- **6.** Is the place where you live now <u>convenient</u>? For example, is there good transportation nearby? Can you walk to a market easily?
- 7. What are some things you have got to do before you go to bed tonight?
- 8. Explain the difference between a credit card and a debit card.

DESCRIBING LOCATIONS

Read Activity 5 on page 66 again. Find the location of the places where Kenji will go an write them in the blanks.

Bank;	
Dry cleaner:	
Computer renaîr shon:	

Streets can be called *avenue*, *boulevard*, *road*, *drive*, or *way*. These words are very important when writing an exact address. They are not so important in giving direction

Example

I live at 8051 Holloway Avenue. My house is at the corner of Holloway and Pacific.

The following expressions are often used to describe a location.

- on _____ (name of street)
- near near
- nearby
- m next to
- next door to
- in front of
- across from/across the street from
- at the corner of ______ and ____
- two/three/four blocks from
- in the middle of the block
- the second/third/fourth building from the corner

Culture Note

In the United States, people often say block to describe a general location on a street or to describe a distance between two places. A "block" is the distance between two street corners.

Examples

There's an ice cream shop and two apartment buildings on the block where I live.

There's a post office on the next block. There's a park four blocks from here.



Central Park in New York City is 50 blocks long.



Finding Locations Work with a partner. Read these sentences. Then look at the picture and decide if the locations are correct or incorrect. If the location is wrong, make the necessary correction. Use expressions on page 70.

Example The Copy Shop is in front of the medical building.

No, that's wrong. The Copy Shop is across the street from the medical building.

- 1. The ice cream truck is next to the medical building.
- 2. The bus station is the second building from the corner.
- 3. The park is near the bank.
- **4.** The post office is next door to the department store.
- **5.** The Copy Shop is in the middle of the block.
- **6.** The ambulance is in front of the department store.



A city neighborhood



Describing Your Neighborhood Describe your neighborhood to a partner. Use the expressions for describing locations.

Example My neighborhood is noisy but I like it. There is a movie theater nearby. It's just three blocks from my house. My place is also very convenient because . . .



Conversation: Comparing Cities and Towns



- Prelistening Questions You will hear a conversation about large and small communities. Before you listen, answer these questions with a partner.
 - 1. Which photo looks most like your community?
 - 2. Size is one difference between a village, a town, and a city. What other differences can you think of?



A village



A town



A city



Previewing Vocabulary You will hear the underlined words below in a conversation. Listen to the underlined words. Then write the letter of the correct definition beside each sentence.

Sentences

- **1.** Do you know why the color of the sky is brown? It's the smog from all the cars and factories.
- 2. _____ I don't like to take the bus at 5:00 in the afternoon. It's always <u>crowded</u> with so many people coming home from work.
- **3.** Winter in Canada is very cold, but there is also an advantage: there are great places to ski.
- **4.** Patrick wants to work in the United States. His big disadvantage is that he doesn't speak English.

Definitions

- a. good thing,
 positive point
- b. bad thing, negative point
- c. dirty air
- d. full (of people)

Estar



Culture Note

Many large cities in North America have

a busy downtown

in the center and a quiet suburb outside

the city. Many people

prefer to work downtown but to live in the suburbs. These people commute (travel) from home to work and back. Listening for Main Ideas Peter and Kenji just came back from downtown.

They are talking to Ming about their trip. As you listen, decide what the main idea of the conversation is. Then answer the question below.

What is the best title for this conversation?

- (A) Kenji and Peter's Big City Adventure
- B Small Towns Are Better Than Big Cities
- © Why Small Towns Are Better
- (D) No Place Is Perfect

Discuss your choice with your classmates. Tell why you think the other titles don't show the main idea.



▲ Peter



▲ Kenii



▲ Ming

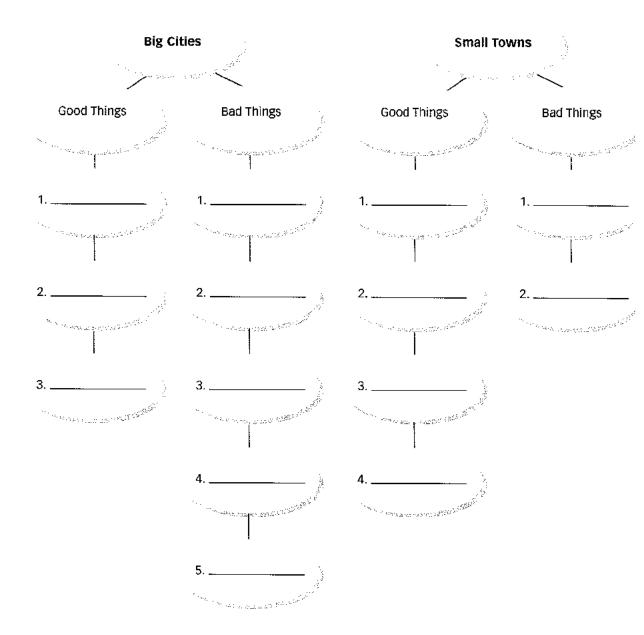
Strategy

Graphic Organizer: Concept Map

A concept map can help you organize your notes when a speaker is comparing two or more sides of a topic. You can also use a concept map to organize your own ideas when you are making this kind of comparison.



Taking Notes on Specific Information Listen again. As you listen, write the key words about big cities and small towns.



Paveratovania Hisiosom



Summarizing Ideas Compare your notes with a partner. Using the key words from Activity 4, form complete sentences about what Peter, Kenji, and Ming said.

Example

They talked about three advantages of big cities. First, cities are exciting. Also, there is good shopping there, and \dots

Using Vocabulary Discuss your answers to the following questions with a partner. Use the underlined vocabulary in your answers.

- 1. Is there a lot of <u>smog</u> in the community where you live now? What is your government doing to reduce smog?
- 2. Name some times and places that are <u>crowded</u> in the city. How do you feel in a crowded place?
- 3. Name some <u>advantages</u> and <u>disadvantages</u> of driving to work and taking the subway to work.



Strategies for Better Listening and Speaking

Reconnective continues from the continues of

(TOEFL® IBT)

Focus on Testing



Using Context Clues Many tests such as the TOEFL® iBT measure your academic listening and speaking abilities. This activity, and others in the book, will help develop your social and academic communication abilities and provide a foundation for success on a variety of standardized tests. You are going to hear five conversations from different parts of the city.

- 1. Listen to the beginning of each conversation.
- Listen to the question for each conversation. Stop the recording and choose the best answer to each question.
- 3. In the Clues column, write the words that helped you choose your answer.
- 4. Listen to the last part of each conversation to hear the correct answer.

Answers	Clues
1. A in a post office	
B in a bank	· ·
© in a gas station	·
2. A on a train B in a taxi	
© on a bus	
3. (A) at a clothing store	
B at a dry cleaner	
© at a coffee shop	
4. (A) getting a driver's lice	ense ·
B visiting an eye docto	
c taking a final exam	
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
5. A at an airport	
5. (A) at an airport (B) at a bank	:



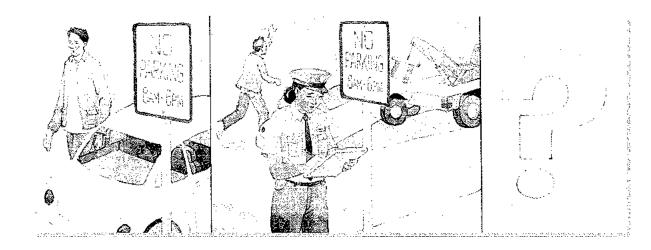


Role-Play Mr. Kim was in a hurry to buy a birthday present. He parked his car on the street. When he finished shopping, he got a surprise!

- 1. With a partner, discuss the cartoon on the next page. Use the vocabulary in the bob below to explain what is happening.
- 2. Then prepare and perform a conversation between Mr. Kim and the parking officer.

CONTROL OF A STATE OF A CONTROL OF A CONTROL

Expressions	Verbs	Nouns
Oh, no!	park	ticket/citation
I can't believe it!	tow away	law
What's going on?		tow truck
Give me a break, officer.		sign



Part 4

Real-World Tasks: Directions

Textoria dintrologica di talendella

EXPRESSIONS FOR ASKING FOR AND GIVING DIRECTIONS You will listen to Peter getting directions to different places in the city. Before you listen, study the expressions listed below.

Asking for Directions	Giving Directions
Could you tell me where is?	Go straight.
where is ?	Go straight for two blocks on (Lennox) Avenue/ Street/Road.
Do you know how to get to ?	Go past (the market).
How do I get to	Go north/south/east/west.
I'm looking for	Turn right/left.
I'm trying to find	Make a right/left.
	Cross the street.
	You'll see it on your right/left.

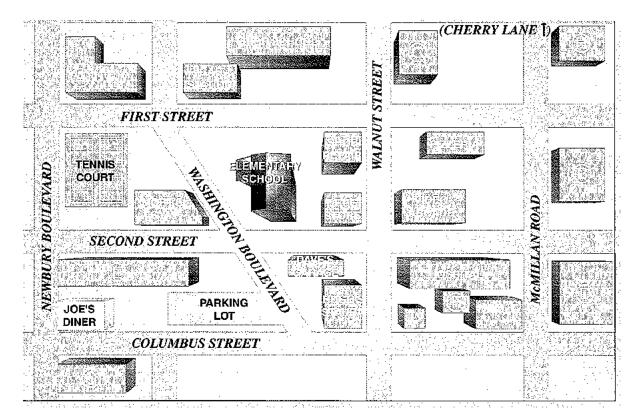
Reading a Map Look at the map tennis courts. Write the directions on the	below. Follow the way from the café to the lines below.
Go north on Lennox.	
	,
Now write directions from the tennis coul	rts to the movie theater,

4	Broadway Boulevard
Tennis courts	i L
Market	i N
	N MARKET SALANDA MARKATATA AARAY
	O Park Street
	X
A CONTRACT C	V
	E 4th Street
Café	N Movie
	υ Theater



Following Directions Peter is getting directions to various places in the city. Right now, he is at Joe's Diner on Columbus Street.

- 1. Find Joe's Diner on the map below.
- 2. Listen to the directions and follow them on the map.
- 3. As you listen, write the name of each place that Peter is looking for on the map.





Giving Directions Look at the map above. Work with a partner. Ask for directions to the places listed below.

Example

- A: How do I get from the hospital to the gas station?
- **B:** Go north on Walnut, turn left on . . .
- 1. from the hospital to the gas station
- 2. from the parking lot to the high school
- 3. from the barbershop to Mort's Gym
- 4. from the tennis courts to the market

Choose one of these buildings on the map: A, B, D, or G, but don't tell your partner which one. Give directions to the building from Joe's Diner. Ask your partner to tell you the letter of the building that he or she arrives at.

GETTING DIRECTIONS ON THE PHONE

If you need directions, your local bus company can help you. Call the bus company and tell them:

- where you want to leave from
- where you want to go
- what time you need to get there



Listening for Directions on the Phone Listen to the following telephone conversations with the Metro Bus Company. Take notes on each conversation.

1.	Destination:
	Bus number:
	Time to get on:
	Place to get on:
	Place to get off:
2.	Destination:
	Time to get on:
	Place to get on:
	Fare: \$
	Travel time:
3.	Destination:
	Bus number:
	Place to get on:
	How often bus runs:

Compare your notes with a partner.



Which bus should I take?

Language Tip

The word **fare** is used for the cost of transportation.

Example:

How much is the airfare from Miami to Sao Paulo? I need \$25 for cab fare.

Do you have enough money for the **bus** fare?

Self-Assessment Log

Check the words you l	learned in this chapter.			
Nouns	Verbs	Adjective	es	
□ advantage □ drop off		□ convenient		
 debit card 	(something or	□ crowde	: d	
disadvantage	someone)			
□ dry cleaner	give (someone)			
🗅 jaywalking	a ride			
🗅 laundry	□ have got to			
□ smog	□ run errands			
Check the things you o	did in this chapter. How well	you can do ea	ch one?	
		Very well	Fairly well	Not very
				well
can listen to and prac	٥	Q.	•	
can listen to, ask for, and give directions.			۵	
I can take notes on a conversation.			ū	
I can summarize my notes.		u	а	
I can guess meanings from context.		۵		
I can talk about maps.		ä		Q.
Write what you learne	d and liked in this chapter.			
In this chapter,				
I learned			¥1 1118	
Lliked				
- missi				
		 '		·

Home

Conversation:

Finding the Right Apartment

Conversation:

Touring an Apartment

Getting Meaning from Context: Getting Along with Roommates

Real-World Tasks:

Caring for Someone's House

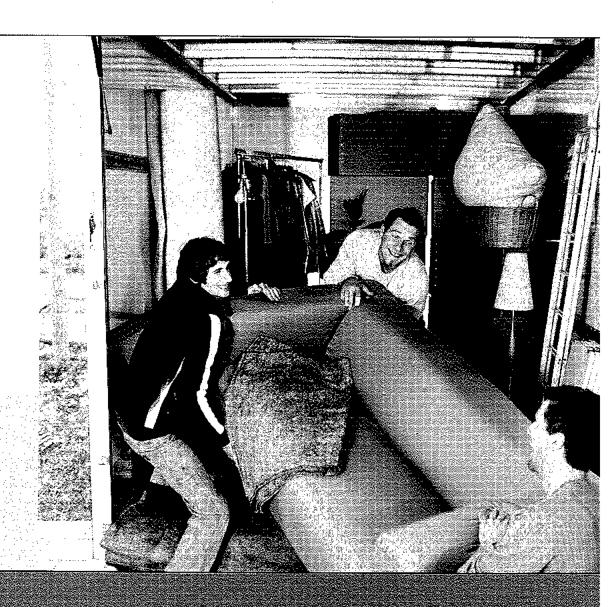
🐔 A good home must be made, not bought. 🥦

—Joyce Maynai American autho (1953 -



Connecting to the Topic

- What are the men in the picture doing? Why?
- 2 How many times in your life have you moved? What were the reasons?
- Is it common for young adults in your culture to live by themselves? Why or why not?



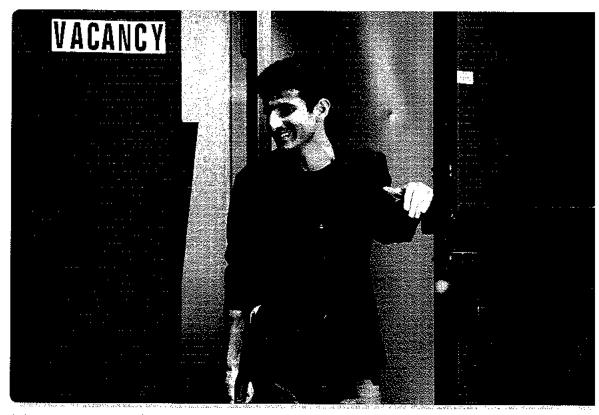


Conversation: Finding the Right Apartment

u Brender (de Nache de Leyeus).



- Prelistening Questions Before you listen, talk with a partner.
 - 1. Look at the photo. What is happening?
- **2.** What kind of place do you live in now: an apartment? a house? a student dormitory?



▲ An apartment manager (landlord)



Previewing Vocabulary Listen to the words and phrases from the conversation. Then complete the sentences below with the words and phrases.

No	uns	Verbs	Adjectives	Adverb		
clos	set	move (in/out)	furnished/unfurnished	pretty		
fire	place	raised	stressed out	- •		
	dlord					
stu	dio					
vac	ancy					
1.	Mr. Davis is something is	the owner of the hous s broken in the kitcher	e where I live. He always helps n or the bathroom. He is a very	me when good		
2.	Don't leave y	your clothes and shoes	s in the living room. Put them i	n your		
3.	3. I only need one room to live in because I'm alone and I don't have much mone					
	So I'm going	to rent a	apartment.			
4.	4. Jack has to buy a bed, a desk, a table, chairs, and some other things because					
	his new apartment is					
5.	My place is		close to campus. It's only a 20	-minute walk		
6.	After two years, the owner of the building I live in my rent from \$850 to \$950 a month.					
7.	This hotel is at another he	full; it has no otel.	. We'll have to lo	ook for a roon		
	I like to use i warm.	my	in winter. It makes my apa	ırtment very		
9.	If you don't l another plac	ike your apartment, ye e.	ou can a	and find		
10.	Joanne has t	o study for two tests t	omorrow, and she also has to p	ick up her		
			he feels			





Listening for Main Ideas Ming is talking to her friend Beth about apartments. Close your books as you listen to the conversation. Listen for the answers to these questions.

- 1. Why is Beth stressed out?
- 2. What does Beth learn from Ming that makes Beth feel better?

Compare and discuss your answers with a partner.

Listening for Details Listen again if necessary. Write T if a statement and F if it is false.				
	1	. Ming's building is close to campus.		
	2	. Ming's building has a parking garage.		
	3. In Ming's building, a one-bedroom apartment rented for \$850			
	4	. Beth needs an unfurnished apartment.		
	37 63			
CD 2, Track 15	stressed	tening for Stressed Words Listen to the conversation again. Some of the words are missing. During each pause, repeat the phrase or sentence. Then fanks with words you hear.		
	Beth:	I'm stressed My landlord ju		
		raised my I think I'll have to		
	Ming:	Really? You know, my building has some It's a pretty		
	·	nice place, and it's just minutes from campus.		
	Beth:	Oh yeah? How much is the rent for a?		
		There are no apartments in our building. My		
	Ů	neighbor just of a		
		one-bedroom. He paid \$850 a month, I think.		
	Beth:	That's not Tell me more.		
		Well, one-bedrooms come with a, a kitchen, a		
	ŭ	fireplace in theroom, pretty big closets, and		
		uh Are you looking for a or unfurnished place?		
	Beth:	Unfurnished, I have all my stuff. What about parking the stuff stuff stuff.		
	_ ,,	and?		
	Ming:	There's no garage. You have to park on the street. But there is a		
	G	room downstairs.		
	Beth:	Hmm. I think I'm Could you give me the address?		
		Sure. It's 1213 Rose Avenue. The name is Mr. Azizi		
	_	Call him up or		
		and talk to him.		
	Beth:	Thanks, Ming. I'm going to do that tomorrow for		

Now read the conversation with a partner. Practice stressing words correctly.

Reductions



Comparing Unreduced and Reduced Pronunciation. The following sentences come from the conversation. Listen for the difference between unreduced and reduced pronunciation. Repeat both forms after the speaker.

Language Tip

Note that sometimes the hat the beginning of a word is reduced, and sometimes it isn't: You reight hear, "l'il hafta move" (or) "I'll afta park."

Unreduced Pronunciation

- **1.** I think I'll have to move.
- **2.** Are you looking for a furnished place?
- 3. You have to park on the street.
- **4.** Could you give me the address?
- 5. Call him up.
- 6. Stop by and talk to him.
- 7. I'm going to do that tomorrow.

Reduced Pronunciation*

I think I'll (h)afta move.

Arya looking for a furnished place?

You (h)afta park on the street.

Couldja gimme the address?

Call 'im up.

Stop by 'n' talk to 'im.

I'm gonna do that tomorrow.



Listening for Reductions Listen to the following conversation. You'll hear the reduced pronunciations of some words. Repeat each sentence during the pause. Then write the unreduced forms of the missing words in the blanks.

A:	Mr. Azizi, Ianother problem.	talk to you. I have
B:		call me later? I'm busy now.
A:	No, I need the plumber again	call
	right no	w?
B:	I have a	things to do. I'll call
	tomorro	w morning, okay?
A:	No, I need	right now!
B:		having trouble with the toilet again:
A:	Yes. Look, just	the plumber's phone
	number. I'll call	
	All right, all right. Just	a minute

With a partner, read the conversation. Practice reduced pronunciation.

^{*} Note: The underlined forms are not acceptable spellings in written English.



Using Vocabulary Work in pairs. Student A should look at page 201, Student B should look at page 205. Follow the instructions. Study the information in your box for a few minutes before you begin.

Pronunciation



THE -ED ENDING IN PAST TENSE VERBS

The *-ed* ending in past tense verbs is pronounced one of three ways, depending on the sound that comes before *-ed*.

/id/ after -d and -t

Examples waited, invited, needed

/t/ after unvoiced sounds: -p, -k, -f, -s, -ch, -sh, -x

Examples missed, watched, helped

/d/ after voweis and other voiced sounds: -b, -g, -j, -m, -n, -l, -r, -th, -v, -z, -w **Examples** lived, showed, listened



Distinguishing Among -ed Endings Listen and write the following words. Then check the sound you hear at the end of the word.

		/id/	/t/	/ d /
1	turned		C)	ପ
2				٥
3		٥	ū	۵
4	****		ū	0
5	·		G	٥
6			0	o.
7			ū	۵
8			٥	۵
9				ū
10				O:



Pronouncing -ed Endings Work with a partner. Ask and answer the following questions in complete sentences. Pay attention to the pronunciation of the -ed endings

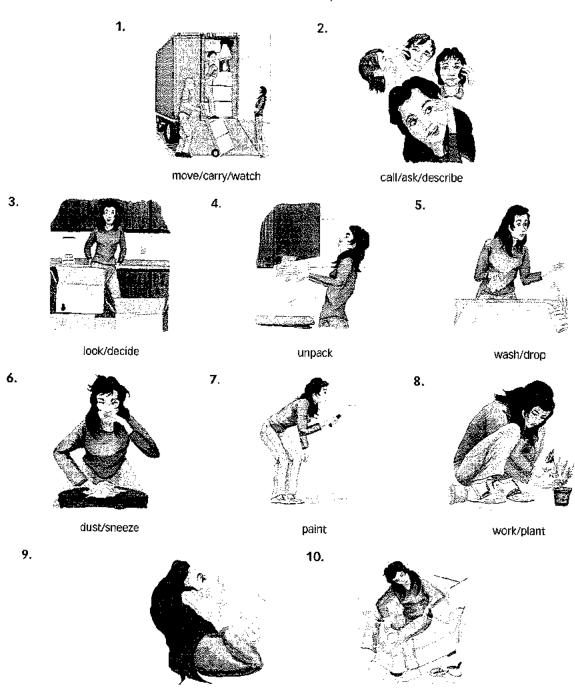
- 1. When did you move to the home, or place, you live in now?
- 2. Who recommended this school to you?
- 3. When did you first start cleaning or decorating your own childhood bedroom?
- 4. When was the last time you called your family?
- 5. What TV programs or movies did you watch at home, recently?



Using -ed Endings Working with a partner, look at the pictures. Talk about Jennifer's moving day. Use the past tense of each verb. Pronounce the -ed endings carefully.

Example

Jennifer moved into her new place. First, the movers carried the boxes inside and Jennifer watched them. Then, Jennifer \dots



order

rest



Asking for Information About Apartments

- 1. Look at the three apartment advertisements. They do not give very much information.
- 2. Make up five questions about the apartment in each ad. Use the ideas on the right.
- **3.** Work with a partner. One of you is the manager, and the other one is the renter. Ask and answer the questions you prepared.
- 4. Change roles for each ad.

	4. Change Toles for each ad.	
1.	Beautiful apartment;	Rent?
	walk to campus.	Number of rooms?
	Call 555-2009 for more information.	Noise?
		Stove/refrigerator?
		(Your own question)
2.		Area?
	TWO-BEDROOM APARTMENT \$1500. Good location. Call 555–1828.	Lease?
	The Control of the Co	Garage?
		Number of bathrooms?
		(Your own question)

ROOM TO LET
Lots of privacy.
Leave message
at 555-5520.

Furnished? —	
Bathroom?	 <u>-</u>
Laundry?	
Location?	
Rent?	

Part 2

Conversation: Touring an Apartment



A Carriage Date Control of the Carriage of the Carriage Control of the Carriage of the Carriag

Prelistening Questions You will hear a conversation between Beth and an apartment manager showing her the apartment. Before you listen, answer these questions with a partner.

- 1. What do you like and dislike about the home where you live now? Name two good things and two bad things.
- 2. Who found your current home for you: you? your parents? a housing advisor? an agent?
- **3.** In your experience, in what ways are apartment managers generally helpful or unhelpful?



Previewing Vocabulary Listen to the underlined words from the conversation. Then write the letter of the correct definition for each underlined word beside each sentence.

Sentences

My apartment lease says that I have to stay there for one year.
 I need a new apartment. Is there an available apartment in your building?
 My shower is broken. Can you fix it?
 You don't have to sign a lease for this apartment. You can just rent it month-to-month.
 A pipe in my bathroom has a leak, and now my bathroom is full of water.

Definitions

- a. able to be bought/rented/acquired
- b. to repair; to make something work again
- c. a crack or hole that allows liquid to escape
- d. a contract; a signed agreement to live in a home for a period of time
- e. without a yearly contract





Listening for Main Ideas Beth is looking at an apartment in Ming's building. Listen to her conversation with the manager. To help you remember the main points, take notes on these questions while you listen.

2. Is th	nis a good apartment or not?		
—— 3. Wha	at's Beth's decision?	<u> </u>	• ***



Taking Notes on Specific Information Listen again. Take more detailed notes about the good things and the bad things in the apartment. Compare your list with a partner.

Rooms Visited	Good Points	Bad Points
living room		
apartment in general		1

Zanaku ka kalin bilansana



Summarizing Ideas Compare notes with a partner. Together, summarize the conversation. As you speak, look at your notes from Activities 3 and 4 to help you remember.



- **Using Vocabulary** Discuss the following questions with a partner. Use the underlined vocabulary in your answers.
 - 1. What is the advantage of a lease for (a) the renter? (b) the landlord?
- 2. Why do some people prefer to rent a place month-to-month rather than for a whole year?
- 3. If anything breaks in your home, who fixes it?
- **4.** If your friend is moving to a new house or apartment, what days are you available to help him or her?
- 5. If your ceiling has a leak, what should you do?

ending symplesing

MAKING AND ANSWERING REQUESTS

It is important to learn how to make and answer formal and informal requests correctly.

No	Yes		
I'm afraid I can't	Certainly.	Could you?	Formal
I'm sorry, I can't.	Of course.	Would you please?	1
	I would be happy to. I don't mind.*	Can you please? Would you mind* ing ?	
Absolutely not.** No way.**	Sure. Okay.	I'd like you to I need you to	Informal (or stronger) i
	Okay. No problem.	I want you to	stronger)

- * "Would you mind ...?" means "Is it a problem for you?" The answer is negative: "I don't mind" means "It's not a problem."
- ** "Absolutely not" and "No way" are strong refusals which could be considered rude.



Role-Play Beth likes the apartment in Ming's building. However, she wants some of the "bad things" corrected. She decides to ask the manager about these things:

changing the wall color putting in air conditioning fixing the bathroom leak

lowering the rent having some pets

- 1. With a partner, role-play a conversation between Beth and Mr. Azizi, the manager. Use the expressions in the chart above.
- After you practice, perform your role-plays for the class. Then talk about the levels of politeness that each pair used and how that possibly affected the results in each role-play.

Part 3

Strategies for Better Listening and Speaking

(TOEFL® IBT)

Focus on Testing



Using Context Clues Many tests such as the TOEFL® iBT measure your academic listening and speaking abilities. This activity, and others in the book, will develop your social and academic communication abilities, and provide a foundation for success on a variety of standardized tests. Listen to the following conversations between roommates.

- 1. Listen to the beginning of each conversation.
- Listen to the question for each conversation. Stop the recording and choose the best answer to each question. Remember to use clues, signals, words you know, grammar, stress, and intonation to help you guess.
- 3. In the Clues column, write the words that helped you choose your answer.
- 4. Listen to the last part of each conversation to hear the correct answer.

Answers Clues 1. A studied for an exam

- B made noise until 3:00 а.м.
- C went to sleep
- 2. (A) because she is messy and doesn't clean
 - B because she won't talk to her
 - c because she doesn't take care of the furniture
- 3. (A) they like the same television shows
 - (B) they usually watch the news
 - c there's only one television in the house
- 4. A his roommate should pay more than half
 - (B) his roommate uses the phone too much
 - (c) his roommate should pay all the bills
- 5. (A) it has four bedrooms
 - (B) it's not comfortable for four people
 - c the rent is shared by four roommates





Finding a Roommate Nabil and Roberto don't know each other. They meet at "Roommate Finders," because they are both looking for roommates. Read about Nabil and Roberto and decide if they will agree to be roommates.

Nabil

His rent just went up. To save money, he wants to share his apartment with someone. He is a very clean, quiet, and neat guy. He has a job and a cat.

the constant of the constant o

Roberto

He wants to move out of his parents' home. He is looking for a cheap place to rent. He is messy and plays for a baseball team. He has a part-time job and goes to school part-time. He has a small dog.

With a partner, prepare and perform a role-play between Nabil and Roberto.



Parti 4.

Real-World Tasks: Caring for Someone's House

Strategy

Graphic Organizer: Multi-Column Chart

A multi-column chart can help you keep track of things that you have to do. For example, you can use this kind of chart to plan your homework for the week. List your classes in the left column, the task you have for each class in the second column, how long each task will take, when you plan to do the task, and so on:

Classes	Tasks	How long will it take me?	When will I do it?
English	write a paragraph	two hours	Monday afternoon
Math	p. 46, Exercise A	one hour	Tuesday morning



- Preparing to Leave Home for Vacation Before going on vacation, some people ask a friend or neighbor to take care of their home while they are gone.
 - 1. Look at the list of items to take care of in the chart on the next page. Think about the things you or your family would need done if everyone left home for a month. Discuss the possibilities with a partner or in a small group.
 - 2. Before Beth's uncle went away for a month-long vacation, he called to ask her to take care of his house while he was away. Listen to their conversation. Complete the chart to show what Beth's uncle wants her to do.

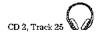


A Beth's uncle's house

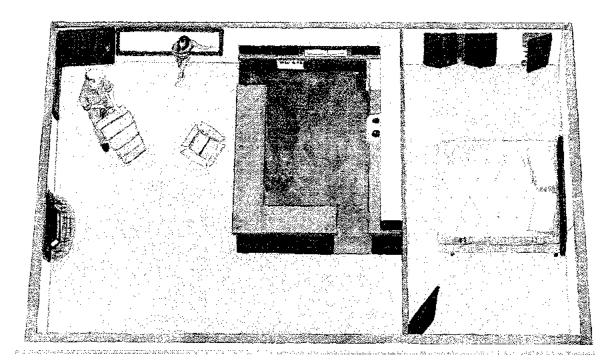
Homecare Vacation Instructions

Item to Take Care of	What to Do	How Often/When to Do It	Details, Notes
1. mail	a)		
newspaper	b) pick up from yard		
 2. dog	a)		Dog food will be in bag
	b)		Dog food will be in bag in kitchen
	c)		
3. garbage	a)		Uncle will take garbage to street
l. rose bushes	a)		
. swimming pool and house	a) clean up		

Listen again, then compare your chart with one or more classmates to try to complete the list accurately.



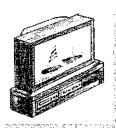
- Listening to Moving Instructions Look at Beth's empty new apartment. She is going to tell the movers where to put each item.
 - 1. Before you listen, look at the apartment and predict where the furniture and other things will go.
 - 2. Now listen to Beth's instructions to the movers. Write the number of each thing in the correct place on the picture.



1.



2.



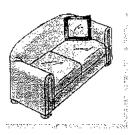
3.



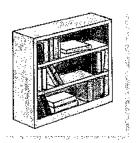
4



5.



6.





Comparing Pictures Work in pairs. Student A should look at the picture on page 201. Student B should look at the picture on page 205. Tell each other about each item and its location in the room. Find ten differences without looking at each other's pictures.

Example

A: In my picture, there is a shoe beside the bed.

B: In mine, the shoe is in front of the closet.

Self-As	sessment L	OS .			
Check the words you learned in this chapter.					
Nouns closet fireplace landlord leak lease studio vacancy	□ fix □ available □ pr □ move (in/out) □ furnished/unfurnished Expr		iverbs pretty pressions month-to-month		
Check the things	you did in this chapter. F	łow weil can yo	u do each or	ie?	
			Very well	Fairly well	Not very well
I can listen to an	d practice stress and red	uctions.	٥	•	
	d pronounce -ed endings	i.		3	
I can talk about f	înding an apartment.		D)	o	ū
I can take notes	on a conversation.		3		ū
I can summarize	=		۵	O:	
I can make and a	•		•		٥
_	nings from context.		C)		۵
I can talk about I	nomecare.		Ф		ū
Write what you	earned and what you lik	ed in this chap	ter.		
In this chapter,					
I learned		1		,	
l liked					



Cultures of the World

manie Granier

Conversation:

Learning New Customs

Lecture:

Coming-of-Age Ceremonies

Getting Meaning from Context: Cultural Differences

Real-World Tasks:

Dining Customs

🐔 Culture is the widening of the mind and of the spirit. 🏂

-Jawaharlal Nehr Indian politicia (1889 - 1964)



Connecting to the Topic

- Look at the photo. What do you know about this culture?
- What kinds of difficulties can a person have when visiting or moving to a place with a different culture?
- 3 What places and cultures are you interested in? Why?





Conversation: Learning New Customs



Prelistening Questions Before you listen, talk about travel with a partner.



A Salma talking on her cell phone.

- 1. Discuss the situation in the photo. Why shouldn't Salma use her cell phone?
- 2. Do you know the expression "When in Rome, do as the Romans do"? Tell abou a time when you followed this advice.
- 3. How do you feel when you travel to a new place, meet new people, and experience new customs? Circle the words in the box that describe how you feel. Explain or give examples of times that you have had these feelings.

excited	careful	afraid	shy	nervous
energetic	homesick	worried	interested	curious



Previewing Vocabulary Listen to the underlined words. You will hear these words in the conversation. Then use the context to guess their meanings. Write your guesses in the spaces.

Contexts	Meanings
My first impression of my new boss was not good. He seemed strict and unfriendly when I first met him, but now I like him.	
I don't like getting up at 6 A.M., but I am <u>used to</u> it now because I've been doing it every day for three years.	
Mr. and Mrs. Haley like to travel to <u>exotic</u> places. They like unusual and interesting vacations.	
If you don't finish your food in an American restaurant, you can take the remaining food home in a doggie bag.	
5. When I arrived in the U.S., I was amazed by the number of large cars on the road. There were so many! We have only small cars where I'm from.	
Our teacher has not given us a lot of homework so far, but maybe she'll give us more next week.	
7. When we finished dinner, we saved the leftovers in the refrigerator.	





Listening for Main Ideas Yolanda and her friend Salma, who is visiting from Lebanon, are having lunch. Kenji is also having lunch at the restaurant. Close your book as you listen to the conversation. Listen for the answers to these questions.

- 1. What is Salma's impression of the United States?
- 2. What surprised Salma in the restaurant?

Compare and discuss answers with a partner.

	and F if it is	-	again if necessary, write i	ir a statement is true
	1. S	alma doesn't like hotdog	s because they don't tast	te good.
	2. K	enji likes American food		
		t the Mexican restaurant doggie bag.	, Yolanda was surprised	when Salma asked for
	4. Ir	Salma's country, using o	cell phones is common e	verywhere.
		alma says "When in Rom art eating American food	*	to mean that she will
	Stras			
CD 2, Track 28	of the stress	ing for Stressed Wor sed words are missing. Du he blanks with the words	ring each pause, repeat ti	
	Kenji:	So, Salma, is this your _	trij	p to the United States:
	Salma:	Yes, it is.		
	Kenji:	And what's your	so far?	
	Salma:	Well, the people are rea	lly	_, and the city is
		beautiful. But the	; well, it	's not so good.
	Kenji:	Oh, yeah, that's what I t	hought too when I	got
		here. But I'm	to Americar	n food now. I actually
		h	otdogs and French fries.	
	Yolanda:	So last night I took Saln	na to a	restaurant. I
		wanted her to try some	thing	
	Kenji:	Did you	it?	
	Salma:	Yeah, the food was	good, b	out it was
			I c	couldn't
		it		
	Yolanda:	Salma was	when I took th	ne
		home in a doggie bag.		
	Kenji:	Yeah, that's funny,	it? They	y call it a
		b	ag, but it's for people. A	nyway, what
		S	urprised you?	

Salma	That the restaurant was so	! We don't use	
	conditi	oning so much in my country. Oh, and the	
	water had	in it, too. I had to put on my	
	, I was s	o cold!	
Now read	I the conversation with two other c	lassmates. Practice stressing words correctly	
Seinc Salinc	tions		
sentence	nparing Reduced and Unred s come from the conversation. List ced pronunciation. Repeat both for	uced Pronunciation The following en for the difference between unreduced ms after the speaker.	
Unreduc	ced Pronunciation	Reduced Pronunciation*	
	your first trip to the d States?	Is thishyer first trip to the United States?	
2. What's	s your impression so far?	Whatcher impression so far?	
3. I want	ed her to try something exotic.	I wanted 'er ta try something exotic.	
togetner.	Listening for Reductions Anita and Brenda have just finished eating lunch together. Listen to their conversation. Repeat each sentence during the pause. Then write the unreduced forms of the missing words in the blanks.		
Anita:	Well, it's time to get back to the	e office. I'll see you soon, Brenda.	
Brenda	: OK, see you Wait, Anita, is cell phone?		
Anita:	Oh my goodness, yes, thanks. I	By the way, I almost forgot: my parents	
	are coming		
Brenda	: Really? I'd love	meet	
Anita:	Well,		
	have lunch	with us on Saturday?	
Brenda	: Saturday? Hmm I promised	my roommate I would go shopping with	
	that day. Co	ould we get together	
	coffee later in the afternoon?		
Anita:	I	They might be busy, but I'll ask.	
With a par	tner, read the conversation. Praction	ce reduced pronunciation.	
		•	

 $[\]ensuremath{^{*}}$ Note: The underlined forms are not acceptable spellings in written English.





Using Vocabulary Discuss the following questions with a partner. Use the underlined vocabulary in your answers.

- 1. Do you remember the first time you visited a foreign country? What was your first impression of it?
- **2.** Has anything changed in your life in the past year? For example, did you start a new job? Did you move to a new place? Are you <u>used to</u> the new situation in your life?
- **3.** What is the most exotic place or food that you have experienced in your life?
- **4.** What would happen if an American asked for a doggie bag in your country?
- **5.** How many years of education have you completed so far?
- **6.** What <u>amazes</u> you about the United States or another country you have visited Finish this sentence: "I am amazed that...."
- 7. Some people hate to eat leftovers. How about you?





Discussing Behavior in this section you learned the expression "When in Rome, do as the Romans do." But is this always a good rule to follow? Work in small groups and discuss the following questions.

- 1. Have you ever been in a situation where everyone was behaving in a way that you didn't like? How did you feel? What did you do?
- 2. In what situations might it be impossible for you to "do as the Romans do"? Brainstorm a list of situations. What would you do if you found yourself in one of these situations?

Lecture: Coming-of-Age Ceremonies

New roles with the creek



- Prelistening Questions Before you listen, talk with a partner about coming of age in different countries.
 - 1. At what age does a person come of age, or become a legal adult, in your culture?
 - 2. Do you know of any special customs or ceremonies when a person becomes an adult? Is it different for boys and girls?



▲ These young women celebrate Coming-of-Age Day in Japan.



Previewing Vocabulary You will hear the following words in the lecture. List to the words. Then write the letter of the correct definition beside each word.

Words	Definitions
1. the woods	a. a formal or traditional way of
2. adult	celebrating an important event
3 adulthood	b. the time of life when a person is not a child anymore
4 ceremony	c. to wait for an event with a feeling of
5 responsible for	pleasure
(something) 6 passage	d. a movement to the next stage or level of something
7 look forward to	e. an area thickly covered with trees
(something)	f. in control of something and taking care of it
	g. a person who is grown up, not a child anymore



Listening for Main Ideas Listen to a short lecture about becoming an adult three different cultures. As you listen, list the cultures in the spaces below.



Taking Notes on Specific Information Listen again. This time, fill in the details about each culture.

Culture	Age	Details
I. North American Indian	12-13	
	·	
2.		
3.	:	
	1	





Summarizing Ideas In groups of four, use your notes from Activities 3 and 4 to summarize the lecture. Each student should speak about one culture. Try to speak in complete sentences.



Using Vocabulary Discuss the following questions with a partner. Use the underlined vocabulary in your answers.

- 1. Are you legally an adult?
- 2. Which is easier, in your opinion: adulthood or childhood? Why?
- 3. In your community, is there a ceremony when a baby is born? If yes, describe it.
- 4. When you were a teenager, were you responsible for watching your younger brothers and sisters? How did you feel about this responsibility?

- 5. What has been the most important passage in your life until now?
- **6.** Are you <u>looking forward to</u> the next passage in your life (graduation, marriage children, retirement, etc.)? Why or why not?
- 7. How would you feel about going into the woods alone for three days? Why would you feel this way?





At What Age . . . ? Work in small groups. Talk about when people should be allowed to do the following activities.

Examples

I think 16 is too young to get a driver's license. Age 18 is better because . . .



get a driver's license	
get married with parents' permission	
vote	
get a credit card	
live away from parents	
join the army	
become a minister in the government of your country	
retire (with full government benefits)	

▲ A teenage driver

Strategies for Better Listening and Speaking

Casamermanine Komi Context

Strategy

Graphic Organizer: Matrix Diagram

A matrix diagram organizes information about two or more characteristics of two or more topics. You can use a matrix diagram to:

- show the characteristics clearly
- study and remember the characteristics
- compare the characteristics
- organize your ideas about the characteristics



Prelistening Discussion When you visit other countries, it's important to know the local customs. Polite behavior in one culture can be rude in another culture. For example, kissing a friend to say hello is normal in France but not in Korea. Give examples of some polite and rude behaviors from your culture. Discuss with your group and fill in the chart.

Polite Behaviors	Rude Behaviors
being on time for appointments	being late for an appointment and not calling





Focus on Testing

Using Context Clues Many tests such as the TOEFL® iBT measure your academic listening and speaking abilities. This activity, and others in the book, will develop your social and academic communication abilities, and provide a foundation for success on a variety of standardized tests. The following four conversations take place in North America. In each situation, one speaker's action is "culturally incorrect." Listen and decide what the mistake is.

- 1. Listen to the beginning of each conversation.
- 2. Listen to the question for each conversation. Stop the recording and choose the best answer to each question.
- 3. In the Clues column, write the words that helped you choose your answer.
- Start the recording again. Listen to the last part of each conversation to hear the correct answer.

Answe	rs	Clues
1. (A)	She didn't call before visiting.	
B	She didn't bring a present.	
©	She used Belinda's first name.	
2. (A)	He didn't eat all his food.	
B	He forgot to leave a tip.	
0	He asked for the check.	
3. (A)	He asked about the price of the house.	
$^{\circ}$	He asked too many questions.	
0	He asked the woman for a drink.	
4. (A)	that Koreans buy gifts on people's birthdays.	
B	that Koreans don't celebrate birthdays.	
<u>©</u>	that Koreans don't buy expensive presents for people they don't know very well.	



Comparing Customs Review the mistakes you heard in the Focus on Testing Activity. With a partner, make a statement about each custom. Then compare it to customs in other countries.

In American restaurants, a 15 to 20 percent tip is normal. But in
Before visiting someone in the United States, it's better to call first. But in

adang kanggaryan masioner

Culture Note

We say Excuse me to apologize for small, unimportant mistakes. We also say Excuse me to

- get someone's attention.
- interrupt someone.
- ask someone to move.

We say I'm sorry to

- apologize for minor or serious inistakes.
- show concern for a person's feelings or difficult situation.

APOLOGIZING

The following expressions are often used after we make a mistake and feel bad about a situation. The mistake may be small (stepping on someone's foot) or serious (being a half hour late for a test).

	Apologizing	Responding
Informal	Oops! Excuse me.	Forget about it.
1	Sorry.	Don't worry about it.
	I'm (very) sorry.	No problem.
	It was my fault.	That's okay.
*	I apologize.	That's all right,
Formal	Please forgive me.	I forgive you.



Role-Play Read the following situations. With a partner, prepare a conversation about each situation. Use the appropriate expressions for apologizing and responding.



▲ It's 6 o'clock in the morning on a Saturday.

Situations

- 1. It's 6 o'clock in the morning on a Saturday. Your neighbor comes to your door to complain that your music is too loud.
- 2. You forgot about your doctor's appointment at 3:00 P.M. today. The doctor's secretary calls you to ask what happened.
- 3. You don't feel well and you need to leave in the middle of the class.

Part 4

Real-World Tasks: Dining Customs



A formal dinner party in the United States.



Culture Note

Formal Dining

Family dinners in the United States are usually relaxed and informal. However, sometimes, when special guests are invited, or if you are eating in a restaurant, dinners are more formal and traditional.

A formal American dinner usually has the following parts, served in order:

- 1. soup
- 2. salad
- 3. the *main course* (meat, chicken, or fish; potato or rice; and one or more cooked vegetables)
- 4. dessert (something sweet such as cake, ice cream, or fruit)

Typically, bread and butter are served before the salad is served. Water is almost always served.

While you are waiting for your meal, sometimes an appetizer (a small dish) will be served.



- Prelistening Questions Before you listen, talk about dining customs with a partner.
 - 1. What are the typical parts of a formal dinner in your culture?
- 2. What special foods or beverages are served at formal dinners that you don't usually have every day?
- **4.** Have you ever eaten in a formal restaurant or at a formal dinner party? Describe this experience.



Previewing Vocabulary Listen to the underlined words. You will hear these words in the conversation. Before you listen, use the context to guess their definitions. Write the letter of the correct definition beside each sentence.

Sentences		De	finitions
1	Take a couple of <u>napkins</u> . These	a.	any kind of kitchen to
2	sandwiches are really messy. When I was a teenager, it was my	b.	knives, forks, and spoons
	job to <u>set the table</u> each night before dinner.	c.	the part of a tool that you hold in your hand
3	In a restaurant, it is a waiter's job to serve the food and drinks.	d.	to put dishes, plates, glasses, etc. on a table
4	Please lay that box on the dining		before a meal
_	room table.	e.	reasonable or sensible
5	Europeans use <u>silverware</u> to eat with, while many Asians prefer chopsticks.	f.	put something down
6	Be careful with that knife! Pick it up only by the <u>handle</u> .	g.	to give or bring something to a customer
7	A: What kind of kitchen <u>utensil</u> is this? B: It's a potato peeler. It's much easier to use than a knife.	h.	a piece of cloth or paper used to protect your clothes and
8	It is <u>logical</u> not to eat food that		wipe your mouth

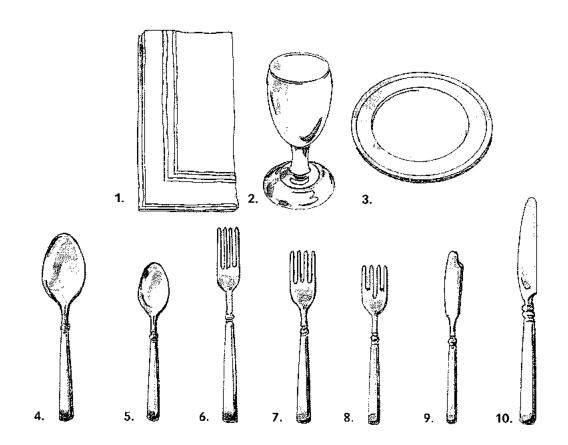


Following Directions for Setting a Table Ming loves cooking and entertaining. For Peter's 23rd birthday, she wants to prepare a formal dinner for their friends. She asks Peter's mother, Mrs. Riley, to teach her how to set a formal dinner table.

while eating

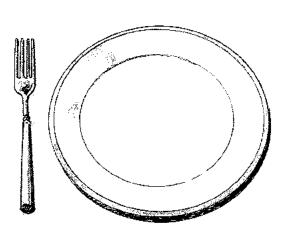
tastes bad.

Listen to the conversation between Ming and Mrs. Riley. Follow Mrs. Riley's instructions for setting the table. As she mentions each item, write its number in the proper place.



- 1. dinner napkin
- 2. water glass
- 3. bread plate
- 4. soup spoon
- 5. dessert spoon
- 6. dinner fork
- 7. salad fork
- 8. dessert fork
- 9. butter knife

10. dinner knife



117



Using Vocabulary With a partner, look at the picture from Activity 3. Take turns naming the numbered items and saying where they belong. Begin like this: "Number 1 a napkin. It goes on the dinner plate." Then answer the questions below.

- 1. In your family, who <u>serves</u> the food when you eat together? Who <u>sets</u> the table?
- 2. What is your favorite or most useful kitchen utensil?
- 3. When you come home from school, where do you lay your books?
- 4. Do you think it is more logical to eat dessert before or after a meal? Why?
- 5. Name several utensils that have handles.



Talking About Table Manners "Table manners" means polite behavior while eating. The picture below contains ten examples of behaviors that are rude in the United States. Work in small groups, Identify the rude behaviors, Write your answers on a separat piece of paper.

Culture Note

People from most countaries think that Americans are very informal. For example, Americans weat jeans to restaurants, they eat while they're walking down the street, and they use people's first names in almost every situation.

However, in some situations.
Americans are very formal. They follow rules of polite social behavior called etiquette. These rules tell people how to dress, talk, eat, and much more.



Answer the question about manners with your group.

Which of these behaviors would be bad manners in other cultures? Which would not? What are some other eating behaviors that are rude in other cultures?

	oomienes	^y δ			
Check the words you learned in this chapter.					
Nouns adult adulthood ceremony doggie bag handie impression	napkin passage patio silverware utensil the woods	Verbs lay look forw (something serve set the ta	ng)	Adjectives amazed exotic logical responsible for (some	thing)
□ leftovers Check the things you did in this chapter. How well can you do each o			ou do each or	so far used to	
			Very well	Fairly well	Not very well
I can listen to and practice stress and reductions.			۰	٥	۵
I can talk about cultural differences.				O.	۵
I can take notes on a lecture.				٥	٥
I can summarize my	notes.			0	ī ·
I can guess meanings	s from context.			0	ā
I can make and respo	ond to apologies.		Q		٥
I can talk about dining customs and table manners.				0	Ċ
Write what you learned and liked in this chapter.					
In this chapter,					
1 learned					
I fiked					



Health

Conversation:

Touring a Health Club

Presentation:

Treating an Illness

Getting Meaning from Context: Talking About Health

Real-World Tasks:

Talking to Health Care Professionais

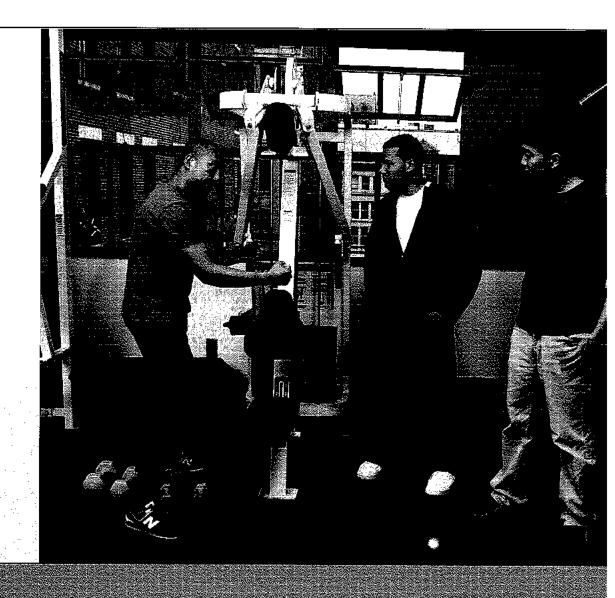
EL Laughter is the best medicine. § 3

-Proverl



Connecting to the Topic

- 1 Who do you see in the photo? What are they doing?
- What are three things a person can do to stay healthy?
- 3 What are the most popular forms of exercise in your country? Why do you think they are so popular?

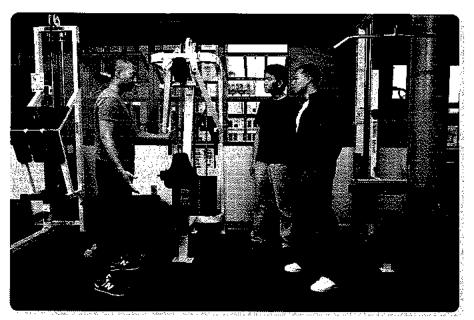


Part 1

Conversation: Touring a Health Club



- Prelistening Questions Before you listen, talk about your health with a partner.
 - 1. Do you belong to a gym or health club? How often do you go?
 - 2. What kinds of classes and activities do health clubs offer?
 - 3. What activities do you do to try to stay healthy?
 - 4. Do you have any habits that are bad for your health?



A Kenji and Peter at the gym



Previewing Vocabulary Listen to these words and phrases from the conversation. Then complete the sentences with the words and phrases.

No	uns	Verbs	Expression
box	ting	lift weights	in good/bad shape
cardio		jog	
disc	count	ought to	
hea	lth club	show (someone)	
locl	ker room	around	
yog	a	swim	
1.	The new swimming pool, a juice bar.	will t a great weight room,	pe very popular because it has a huge lots of exercise equipment, and a cool
2.	Some people bigger muscles.	8	at health clubs to build stronger and
3.	Tom goes to the	gym three times a w	eek because he wants to be
		He likes to lo	ok and feel healthy.
4.	The swimming p	ool at my gym is sep	arated into three sections. Fast swimme
		in the middle	lane and slow swimmers
	in the other two.		
5.		is a 15 percent ir of shoes for \$85.00	on all running shoes.
6.		. You need somethin	class, you need to buy special g to protect your teeth, too, in case you
7.		ew running shoes ev	ve miles every morning before breakfast ery six months.
8.	If you want to los more.	se weight, you	eat less and exercise
9.	If you'd like to se	e all of the different	rooms that our health club has, I can
		you	
10.		helps me to re	lax and stretch my muscles.
11.		for exercising. The	s because our teacher always chooses music is so energizing that it's easy to
12.	You can leave you swim in the pool.		when you go out to





Listening for Main Ideas Peter and Kenji want to get in shape. Close your book as you listen to the conversation. Listen for the answers to these questions.

- 1. Where are Peter and Kenji? How well do you think they like this place? How d you know?
- **2.** What is the purpose of the tour? What would the guide like Peter and Kenji to do?

Compare and discuss your answers with a partner.



Listening for Details Listen again if necessary. Answer the questions.

- 1. What kind of exercise class did Peter and Kenji see?
- 2. What other classes does this gym offer?
- 3. Why should Peter and Kenji join the club this month?

Stress

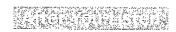


Listening for Stressed Words Listen to the conversation again. Some of the stressed words are missing. During each pause, repeat the phrase or sentence. Then fill in the blanks with the words you hear.

Adel:	Hi, I'm Adel. I'm you're going to			
	it here. Let me show you			
	Here's the room. We've got the newest machines,			
	our instructors can you how to			
	them.			
Peter:	This is!			
Kenji:	Yeah. I really need to start			
Adel:	And here is a class			
Peter:	I've tried cardio. It's just dancing, isn't it?			
Adel:	Not really. Actually, they're working than you			
Kenji:	And cardio is very good for your			
Adel:	It sure is. But you should do it at least times a			
	week if you want to be in			
Peter:	Well, I already three times a week.			
Adel:	That's			

Kenji:	You also have classes here,	
	you?	
Adel:	Yes. I'll give you a	_ of classes when we finish our
	Now here's our	pool.
	C'mon, I'll show you the	and the locker room.
Adel:	You know, if you want to	our gym, you
	to do it	the end of the
	month.	
Kenji:	Really? Why?	
Adel:	Well, because we have a special	for students this
	month go to my office and I'll	
	you all about it.	

Now read the conversation with two other classmates. Practice stressing words correctly,





Using Vocabulary Discuss the following questions with a partner, Use the underlined vocabulary in your answers.

1. Which of the following activities have you tried? Did you like or dislike them? Why?

lifting weights jogging boxing yoga swimming

- 2. Are you in good shape now? If yes, how do you keep in shape? If not, what can you do to get in shape?
- 3. Are you a good swimmer? When did you learn to swim? How did you learn? If you can't swim, are you interested in learning? Why, or why not?
- **4.** Do you think it's fair that students and senior citizens can get <u>discounts</u> at <u>health clubs</u>, movie theaters, restaurants, and other places? Why, or why not?
- 5. Is it safe to leave your money and other valuable things in the <u>locker room</u> at a gym? Why, or why not?
- **6.** Your friend wants to get in shape quickly. Tell your friend what he or she ought to do.



INTONATION WITH TAG QUESTIONS

A tag question is a statement with a "tag" at the end. Affirmative statements take negative tags, and negative statements take affirmative tags. For example:

Culture Note

English speakers often use tag questions to start conversations with strangers in public places, for example, at a bus stop, in a supermarket line, in a doctor's waiting room, in an elevator. The tag questions are always about something general, not personal.

Examples

This elevator is really slow, **isn't it?** This market has excellent produce, **doesn't it?** He's strong, isn't he?

You're not tired, are you?

People pronounce tag questions in two ways. Listen to the following examples. Notice the difference in intonation.

Rising Intonation

Falling Intonation

Your father is a doctor, isn't he?

Your father is a doctor, isn't he?

In the first example, the speaker isn't sure of the answer. He is asking for information, so his voice goes up at the end of the sentence:



Your father is a doctor, isn't he?

In the second example, the speaker is sure that the father is a doctor. The question is not a real question; instead, it is a way of "making conversation." The speaker's voice goes down at the end of the sentence:



Your father is a doctor, isn't he?



Pronouncing Tag Questions Listen and repeat the sentences. The first five are asking for information, so they have rising intonation. The second five are ways of making conversation. They have falling intonation.

- 1. We need special shoes for cardio, don't we?
- 2. The pool is warm, isn't it?
- **3.** You play football, don't you?
- 4. You don't eat junk food, do you?
- **5.** You didn't hurt yourself, did you?
- **6.** My father looks healthy, doesn't he?
- 7. This exercise is hard, isn't it?
- **8.** Your parents enjoy camping, don't they?
- 9. She can swim fast, can't she?
- 10. It's a beautiful day, isn't it?



Understanding Tag Questions Listen again to the sentences, but in a different order. From the intonation, decide if the speaker is asking a real question or just "making conversation." Circle the correct answer.

1,	Asking a question	Making conversation
2.	Asking a question	Making conversation
3.	Asking a question	Making conversation
4.	Asking a question	Making conversation
5.	Asking a question	Making conversation
6.	Asking a question	Making conversation
7.	Asking a question	Making conversation
8.	Asking a question	Making conversation
9.	Asking a question	Making conversation
10.	Asking a question	Making conversation

FORMING TAG QUESTIONS

When the verb be is used in the main statement of the sentence, use be to form the tag question. For example:

Vic is tired, isn't he?

Lori isn't here, is she?

When a modal verb (like *can, could, should, would*) is used in the main statement of the sentence, use the same verb to form the tag question. For example:

Tzu Han can swim, can't she?

Yong Jin shouldn't go, should he?

When other verbs are used in the main statement of the sentence, use *do* to form the tag question. For example:

Farida plays tennis, doesn't she?

Linda doesn't have a car, does she?



Using Tag Questions Work with a partner. Each of you will look at a different set of sentences in the box on page 128. Add a tag question to each sentence. Use rising intonation if you don't know what your partner's answer will be. Use falling intonation if you know the answer. You should both answer truthfully.*

Example (Hamburgers are fattening.)

Student A asks:

Hamburgers are fattening, aren't they?

Student B answers: Yes, I think so. (means Student A is correct.)

^{*} If a tag question is affirmative, answer "No" if you agree with the speaker. Answer "Yes" if you disagree. For example:

A: There's no homework tonight, is there?

B: No, there isn't. (means Speaker A is correct)

B: Yes, there is. (means Speaker A is incorrect)

Student A	
1. You're from (name of city),	
2. The weather is today,	
3. There's no homework tonight,	
4. You play tennis,	
5. Jogging is very boring,	
Student B	Ż
1. You have a (large/small) family,	
2. This classroom is very	
3. Milk isn't healthy for adults,	
4. This lesson is,	
5. American health clubs are expensive,	





▲ Stockbrokers



Talking About Stress You are going to complete a questionnaire about stress First, discuss the following questions with your classmates and teacher.

- 1. What is stress?
- 2. What causes stress?
- 3. What can be the results of living with too much stress?
- 4. When do you feel you are under a lot of stress?

Completing a Questionnaire About Stress Complete the following questionnaire.*

How stressful is your life? Give yourself points from one to five on each item:

1 = almost always 2 = often3 = sometimes4 = seldom5 = never1. ____ I eat at least one hot, nutritious meal a day (a meal that has all the basic foods needed for good health). I get seven to eight hours of sleep at least four nights a week. 3. _____ I give and receive affection regularly. 4. ____ I have at least one relative within fifty miles on whom I can rely, who could help me if I needed help. 5. ____ I exercise fairly heavily (to the point of perspiration) at least twice a week. **6.** I am the appropriate weight for my height. 7. _____ I have an income that is enough to meet the basic expenses. 8. ____ I get strength from my religious beliefs. 9. ____ I regularly attend social activities. 10. ____ I have a network, or group, of friends and acquaintances. 11. ____ I have one or more friends to talk to about personal matters. 12. ____ I am in good health (including eyesight, hearing, teeth). 13. ____ I am able to speak openly about my feelings when angry or worried. 14. ____ I have regular conversations with the people I live with about domestic problems—for example, chores, money, and daily living issues. **15**. _____ I do something for fun at least once a week. I am able to organize my time effectively.

17. ____ I drink fewer than three cups of coffee (or tea or cola drinks) a day.

18. _____ I take quiet time for myself during the day.

^{*} Questionnaire and scoring chart taken from "How Vulnerable Are You to Stress", *Time Magazine*, © Time Inc. Reprinted by permission.

To find your score, add up the numbers and subtract 20. Then check the chart below to analyze your score.

	If your score is	you are
Safe Zone	below 25	living a calm, unstressful life.
Leaving the Safe Zone	between 25 and 45	living with more stress than experts consider healthy. Maybe you should think about making some changes.
Moving Near the Danger Zone	between 45 and 70	approaching the danger zone. Which of the 20 areas can you change?
Danger Zone	over 70	living with entirely too much stress. You may have serious problems as a result.



- Follow-Up Discuss these questions with the whole class or in small groups.
- 1. Who had the highest score in the class? The lowest?
- 2. Look at the 18 items. Find two areas that you would like to change in your life Tell your classmates about these two areas. Then listen as they tell you about the areas they would like to change.



A Doctor's Advice: Treating an Illness







- Prelistening Questions. Before you listen, talk about the flu with a partner.
 - 1. Have you ever had the flu (influenza)?
- **2.** What are the *symptoms* of the flu? (For example: a fever)
- 3. Imagine that you are a doctor. What advice would you give a patient who has the flu?

Strategy

throat ___

Graphic Organizer: Problem-Solution Chart

You can use a problem-solution chart to list problems and possible ways to solve them. In the chart below, the problem column is Symptoms of the Flu and the solution column is Treatment of the Flu.



Culture Note

In many countries, including the U.S., you must get a prescription from a doctor in order to buy certain medicines. The prescription is a piece of paper with the name of the medicine and other important information. You take the prescription to a pharmacy to get the medicine.

Previewing Vocabulary Listen to the words from the conversation. Then in a small group, divide the expressions into two groups in the graphic organizer below: "Symptoms of the Flu" and "Treatment of the Flu." Use a dictionary if necessary.

Nouns	Adjectives	Expression	
aspirin	swollen	eat right	
fever	weak		
headache			
prescription			
rest			
sore throat			
upset stomach			
Symptoms of the Flu	1	Treatment of the Flu	

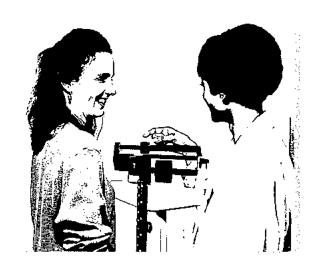
The following body parts are mentioned in the conversation. Define them before you listen. Work with a partner.

muscle _______
forehead ______





Listening for Main Ideas Barbara is at the university health service. Listen to her conversation with her doctor. As you listen, answer these questions.



- 1. What is wrong with Barbara?
- 2. What does the doctor tell her to do?



Taking Notes on Specific Information Listen to the conversation again. This time, take notes in the problem-solution chart below.

Barbara's Complaints	Doctor's Advice	
1.		
2.	1	
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
	I	



Summarizing Ideas Use past-tense verbs to summarize Barbara's visit to the doctor. Include her symptoms and the doctor's advice.

Example

Barbara went to the doctor because she woke up with a terrible headache. She told the doctor . . .

Reviewing Vocabulary Answer the questions with a classmate.

- 1. Look back at Activity 2 on page 131. Which symptoms did you have the last time you had the flu or a cold?
- 2. How often do you take pain pills such as aspirin?
- 3. Look back at the doctor's advice. Which advice do you agree with, or disagree with? Why?

GIVING ADVICE

Here are some expressions for asking for and giving advice.

Asking for Advice What should I do?	Giving Advice You should
What do you think I should do?	You ought to
What do you think I ought to do?	Try to
Should !?	Why don't you
Can you give me some/any advice?	Ladvise you to





Asking for and Giving Advice

- 1. Work with a partner. Describe the problem in each of the following pictures.
- 2. Match the picture with the correct remedy (treatment).
- 3. Finally, role-play each situation. One person describes the problem and asks for advice. The other person gives advice.

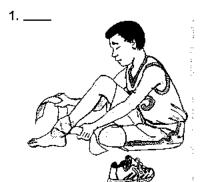
Example

- A: I have a headache. Should I go to a doctor?
- B: I don't think so. Why don't you take an aspirin?

Possible Remedies

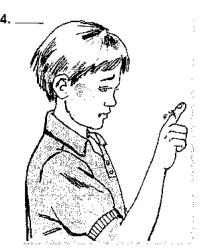
- a. Drink tea.
- c. Bandage it.
- b. Take a sleeping pill. d. Put ice on it.











Part 3

Strategies for Better Listening and Speaking



Focus on Testing



Using Context Clues

Many tests such as the TOEFL® iBT measure your academic listening and speaking abilities. This activity, and others in the book, will develop your social and communication skills, and provide a foundation for success on a variety of standardized tests. Each of the following four conversations has one surprising or unusual thing in it.

- Listen to each conversation. Then listen to the question. Stop the recording after the question, and write what is strange in the Answers column in the chart.
- 2. In the Clues column, write the words that helped you choose your answer.
- 3. Start the recording again.
- 4. Listen to the next part of the conversation to hear the correct answer.

Answers	Clues
1.	
2.	
 3.	
 4.	

Now listen to the following conversations. What are they about? Choose the best answer to each question.

- 1. (A) Nancy's having an operation.
 - B Nancy's going to have a baby.
 - Nancy's working at the hospital.
- 2. (A) coffee shop
 - B supermarket
 - c health food store



Culture Note

A psychologist is an advisor or a counselor who helps people with their personal problems, People from some cultures may think only "crazy" people visit psychologists. However, in the U.S. and Canada. many people feel comfortable getting advice from professionals who are specially trained to help them.

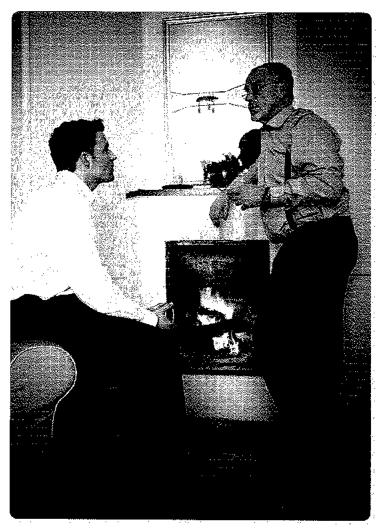
Role-Play People have different ways of getting help with their personal problems. Some people visit psychologists for advice, while others talk to their close friends and family members about their problems.

With a partner, prepare a role-play taking the roles of a friend or family member and someone with one of the problems in the box below.

You are very shy at work.

You want to know why you have some problems at work.

You work 18 hours a day and don't know how to relax.



■ Which man is offering advice?

Telkala ava



Discussing Your Opinion In small groups, read the statements about smoking. Then say if you agree or disagree with each statement, and give reasons for your opinion.



A You cannot smoke in this place. What kind of place do you think this is?

- 1. Smoking should be forbidden in:
 - restaurants
- public transportation
- movie theaters
- hospitals
- classrooms
- shopping centers.
- (your suggestion): _____
- 2. It should be illegal to sell cigarettes to anyone under the age of 18.
- 3. If a smoker gets cancer, it's his own fault. Nobody forced him to smoke.
- 4. If a smoker gets cancer, the tobacco companies should pay his medical bills.
- 5. It is wrong to advertise cigarettes to teenagers.
- 6. I would not have dinner while a person smokes at the next table.
- 7. Governments should educate their people, especially teenagers, about the dangers of smoking.
- 8. If parents smoke, their children will probably smoke also.
- 9. There should not be cigarette advertising:
 - on television
- in magazines
- on the radio
- on billboards



Real-World Tasks: Talking to Health Care Professionals



Taking Notes on Phone Conversations. You will hear three telephone conversations about health situations. Take notes on each call.

Conversation 1				
Reason for call:			 	
			 	
Name of dentist:			 	
Location:			 	
Time of appointment:			 	
Conversation 2				
Reason for call:		 -	 	
Name of patient:				
Price of medicine:	· 		 	
Special instructions:			 	
Closing time:				
Conversation 3				
First reason for call:	 -		 	
Name of baby's doctor:			 	
Time of baby's new appointment: _			 	
Second reason for call:				
Time of husband's appointment:			 	
Name of husband's doctor:				



Making Appointments with Doctors Choose one of the situations from this page or the next page to role-play with a partner. Look only at the box for your role. Do not look at your partner's information!

Language Tip

In Part 2 you learned some common symptoms of the fiu or a cold. Here are additional expressions for reporting on a

variety of symptoms.

I have a cough/a rash/a backache. My arm hurts/aches. My (eye) is sore/swollen/red. I feel dizzy/ nauseated/tired/ hot/cold/ depressed. I have no appetite/energy.

Situation 1: Dentist's office

Roles: patient and receptionist

Patient's Instructions

- 1. Call the dentist's office to change your appointment. Tell the receptionist:
 - a. the time of your old appointment.
 - b. the reason for the change.
- Arrange a new appointment time with the receptionist.

restricted to the contract of the contract of

Receptionist's Instructions

- 1. A patient will call you to change an appointment. Answer the phone politely; then listen to the patient's problem.
- 2. Arrange an appointment time with the patient.

Situation 2: Doctor's office

Roles: patient and receptionist

Patient's Instructions

- 1. Call the doctor's office to make an appointment. Tell the receptionist:
 - a. your medical problem (why you're calling).
 - b. when you want to come in.

eligines and light of Marketing and Lander (Marketing and Lander) and the

2. Ask where you can park.

Receptionist's Instructions

- 1. A patient will call you to make an appointment. Answer the phone politely; then listen to the patient's problem.
- 2. Arrange an appointment time with the patient.

simple parameters and a second of the control of th

Situation 3: Doctor's office

Roles: patient and doctor

Patient's Instructions

- 1. You have a strange medical problem. Tell your doctor:
 - a. your symptoms.
 - b. when they started.
 - c. how often you have them.

Doctor's Instructions

- 1. Listen to a patient tell you about his or her strange symptoms.
- 2. Ask the patient when these symptoms started and how often they happen.

нт тринтикатырын типтир түрүнүн керептериялык түкүнүнүн керептериялык туруктуу жа<mark>лышы жалык</mark>тырге тектендешына

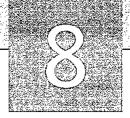
3. Tell the patient that he or she has an unusual disease and give the patient instructions about how to treat the problem.

The following the second of the first of the second of the first of the second of the



"I'd like to change my appointment. Do you have anything available tomorrow?"

<u>Self-Assessment Log</u> Check the words you learned in this chapter. Nouns Verbs Adjectives **Expressions** aspirin □ locker room jog ☐ swollen □ eat right □ boxing prescription lift weights □ weak □ in good/bad □ cardio □ rest ought to shape □ discount □ sore throat □ show □ fever □ upset stomach (someone) □ headache around □ health club □ swim Check the things you did in this chapter. How well can you do each one? Very well Fairly well Not very well I can listen to and practice stress. I can listen to and use tag questions. I can talk about health and stress. I can take notes on a conversation. 0 I can summarize my notes. O I can guess meanings from context. \Box a I can ask for and give advice. Θ. I can practice making a doctor's appointment. Write what you learned and what you liked in this chapter. in this chapter, I learned I likeđ _____



Entertainment and the Media

Conversation:

Watching TV

News Report:

An Airplane Crash

Getting Meaning from Context: Advertisements

Real-World Tasks:

Talking About TV Shows

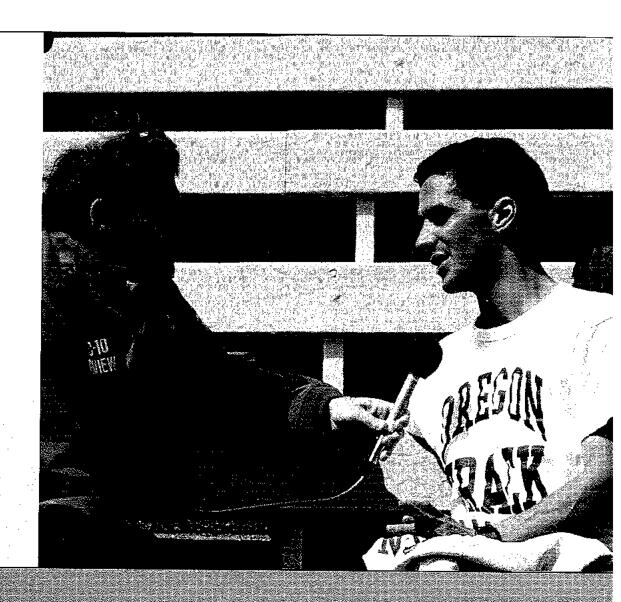
63 Whoever controls the media—the images—control the culture.

> -Allen Ginsber American Beat poet (1926-1997



Connecting to the Topic

- Look at the photo of a sports TV program. Who are the people in the photo? How do they feel?
- 2 What TV programs do you enjoy watching? Why?
- 3 What are some of your favorite advertisements? Why?

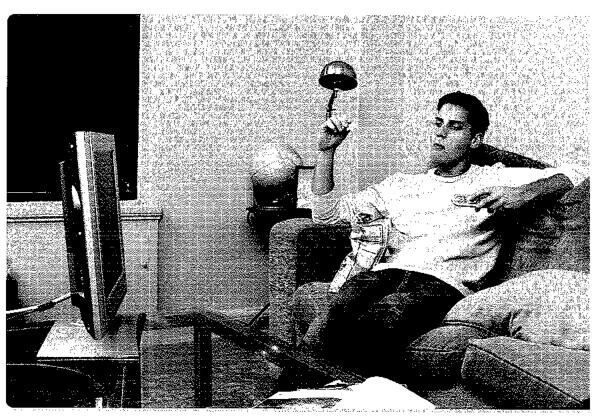




Conversation: Watching TV



Prelistening Questions Before you listen, talk about television with a partner



A Jack is watching television

- 1. How many hours of TV do you watch a week?
- 2. How many television sets do you have in your house? Where are they?
- 3. In your opinion, what's the best way to get the news: from television, a newspaper, or the Internet? Why?



Previewing Vocabulary Listen to the words and phrases from the conversation. Then complete the sentences with the words and phrases. Don't write anything on the lines on the left. You will use those lines in Activity 8.

Nouns		Verbs
average we	ek	change channels
couch potat	co	channel surf
remote con	trol	turn down the volume
the TV		turn on the TV
waste of tim	ne	turn the TV off
1,	As soon as I get home from because I want to know wha	work, I
2	When friends come to visit, wand just talk.	e usually
3	When I don't like a TV show, find another program.	I and
4	The commercials are very lowhen they come on.	ud, so I
5	I prefer to study in a quiet re	oom, without
		on.
6	To find a good program on T	V, I don't look in the newspaper. I usually
	just	until I find something interesting
7		out; I prefer to stay home and watch TV.
	I guess I am a(n)	
8	It's easy to change channels	with a
9	I think TV is very entertainin	g and educational, but other people think
	it's a(n)	•
10	I watch 20 hours of TV durin	g a(n)





Listening for Main Ideas Bruce is visiting Jack. They are talking about television. Close your book as you listen to the conversation. Listen for the answers to these questions.

- 1. What do Jack and Bruce think about watching TV? Do they agree or disagree?
- 2. Why does Bruce prefer to get the news from the Internet or the newspaper?
- 3. What is Jack's habit when watching TV?

Compare and discuss your answers with a partner.

	and F if it	ening for Details Listen again if neces: is false.	sary. Write $ au$ if a statement is true
	1.	The average American watches five ho	urs of TV a day.
	2.	Bruce is reading a newspaper.	
	3.	Bruce is a couch potato.	
	4.	Jack doesn't like soap operas.	
	5.	Bruce and Jack don't like TV commerci	ials.
	Stress		
CD 3, Track 16	stressed in the bla	ening for Stressed Words Listen to a words are missing. During each pause, reports with the words you hear.	eat the phrase or sentence. Then fi
	Bruce:	Hey, to thi	
		American watches	·
		A day? You're	
	Bruce:	No, it says so right here in this	• •
		an average have your	•
	Jack:	Come on. Are you saying I'm a	
	Bruce:	Yeah. I really think watching TV is a	of time
	Jack:	Oh, come	
		programs are bad, like those	operas.
		But what about sports or the those sometimes, don't you?	? You watch
	Bruce:	Well, actually, for the	, I prefer the
		Or the	
	Jack:	Why?	
	Bruce:	First, because they give you a lot more	And
		can them a	any time I want. Plus, I
		all the com	nmercials.
	Jack:	I know what you	That's why, when the
		commercials come on, I just	down the
		volume or change	

Bruce: Yeah, I noticed that. Channel surfing drives me

Jack:	Okay, next time you come	, I'll let you have
	the	
	remote	·
Bruce	: Oh, that's so sweet. But I have a	idea. Next
	time I come over, let's just turn th	e TV
Now rea	d the conversation with a partner. Pra	actice stressing words correctly.
Reduc	ii.	
sentence		ced Pronunciation. The following n for the difference between unreduced s after the speaker.
Unredu	ced Pronunciation	Reduced Pronunciation*
1 . Are y	ou saying I'm a couch potato?	Arya saying I'm a couch potato?
2 Vou 17	vatch those sometimes, don't you?	You watch those sometimes, dontcha?
2. IOU v	ateri atose sorticarties, dotte you:	
	w what you mean.	I know whatcha mean.
 I know I'll let 	w what you mean. you have the remote control.	I know whatcha mean. I'll letcha have the remote control.
3. I know 4. I'll let List reduced write the	w what you mean. you have the remote control. ening for Reductions Listen to pronunciation of some words. Repeatunced forms of the missing work.	I know whatcha mean. I'll letcha have the remote control. the following sentences. You'll hear the teach sentence during the pause. Then do in the blanks.
I knoon I knoo	w what you mean. you have the remote control. ening for Reductions Listen to pronunciation of some words. Repeations unreduced forms of the missing work.	I know whatcha mean. I'll letcha have the remote control. the following sentences. You'll hear the teach sentence during the pause. Then ds in the blanks. calling the movie theater?
3. I know 4. I'll let List reduced write the	w what you mean. you have the remote control. ening for Reductions Listen to pronunciation of some words. Repeatunced forms of the missing work.	I know whatcha mean. I'll letcha have the remote control. the following sentences. You'll hear the teach sentence during the pause. Then ds in the blanks. calling the movie theater?
i. I known. Cli let List educed write the A: B: Uh-	w what you mean. you have the remote control. ening for Reductions Listen to pronunciation of some words. Repeat unreduced forms of the missing worth. go to the movies to	I know whatcha mean. I'll letcha have the remote control. the following sentences. You'll hear the teach sentence during the pause. Then ds in the blanks. calling the movie theater?
3. I know 4. I'll let 7 List reduced write the A: B: Uh-	w what you mean. you have the remote control. ening for Reductions Listen to pronunciation of some words. Repeature unreduced forms of the missing work. huh	I know whatcha mean. I'll letcha have the remote control. the following sentences. You'll hear the teach sentence during the pause. Then ds in the blanks. calling the movie theater?
3. I know 4. I'll let 2 List reduced write the A: B: Uh A: To the	w what you mean. you have the remote control. ening for Reductions Listen to pronunciation of some words. Repeat unreduced forms of the missing worth. go to the movies to	I know whatcha mean. I'll letcha have the remote control. the following sentences. You'll hear the teach sentence during the pause. Then ds in the blanks. calling the movie theater? might? m pretty tired. But we
3. I know 4. I'll let Feduced Write the A: B: Uh-	w what you mean. you have the remote control. ening for Reductions Listen to pronunciation of some words. Repeat unreduced forms of the missing worth. go to the movies to tell the truth, Proceedings of the control of the	I know whatcha mean. I'll letcha have the remote control. the following sentences. You'll hear the teach sentence during the pause. Then its in the blanks. calling the movie theater? might? m pretty tired. But we
3. I know 4. I'll let List reduced write the B: Uh-	w what you mean. you have the remote control. ening for Reductions Listen to pronunciation of some words. Repeat unreduced forms of the missing work. huh go to the movies to tell the truth, I've go to an early show know know know	I know whatcha mean. I'll letcha have the remote control. the following sentences. You'll hear the teach sentence during the pause. Then do in the blanks. calling the movie theater? might? m pretty tired. But we see?
3. I know 4. I'll let 2 List reduced write the A: B: Uh A: To t B: Not	w what you mean. you have the remote control. ening for Reductions Listen to pronunciation of some words. Repeat unreduced forms of the missing worth. go to the movies to tell the truth, Program of the mean words. go to an early show know really. I'll really. I'll remote control of the movies to the	I know whatcha mean. I'll letcha have the remote control. the following sentences. You'll hear the teach sentence during the pause. Then do in the blanks. calling the movie theater? might? m pretty tired. But we see?
3. I know 4. I'll let 5. I'll let 6. I'll	w what you mean. you have the remote control. ening for Reductions Listen to pronunciation of some words. Repeat unreduced forms of the missing work. huh go to the movies to tell the truth, I've go to an early show know really. I'll ring at eight and James Bond is at the control of the control of the control of the movies to the control of the control of the control of the control of the movies to the control of	I know whatcha mean. I'll letcha have the remote control. the following sentences. You'll hear the teach sentence during the pause. Then it is in the blanks. calling the movie theater? might? m pretty tired. But we see? choose. Batman III is en.
3. I know 4. I'll let 5. I'll let 6. I'll let 6. I'll let 6. I'll let 7. I'll let 7. I'll let 8. I'll let 8. I'll let 8. I'll let 9. I'll	w what you mean. you have the remote control. ening for Reductions Listen to pronunciation of some words. Repeat unreduced forms of the missing work. huh go to the movies to tell the truth, I've go to an early show know really. I'll ring at eight and James Bond is at the control of the control of the control of the movies to the control of the control of the control of the control of the movies to the control of	I know whatcha mean. I'll letcha have the remote control. the following sentences. You'll hear the teach sentence during the pause. Then do in the blanks. calling the movie theater? might? m pretty tired. But we see?

 $[\]ensuremath{^{*}}$ Note: The underlined forms are not acceptable spellings in written English.

Align Kildlerten



Using Vocabulary Look at the ten statements in Activity 2 on page 145.

Check [/] the sentences that are true for you. With a partner, discuss the sentences that are not true for you. Use the new vocabulary in your discussion.

Example

Number 6 is not true in my case. I don't like to <u>channel surf</u>. Before I <u>turn on</u> the TV, I always choose a program from the TV guide. But my brother <u>channe surfs</u> all the time.



A My brother channel surfs all the time

recijija kangangan binganéher

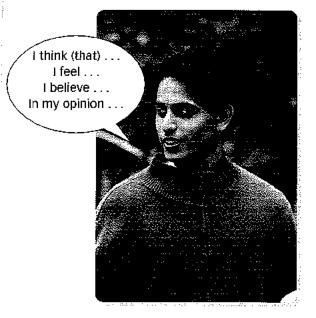
EXPRESSING OPINIONS, AGREEING, AND DISAGREEING When Bruce and Jack had different opinions about television, they used the following language:

Bruce: I really think watching TV is a waste of time.

Jack: Oh, come on!

Look at other expressions English speakers use to express opinions, to agree, and to disagree.

Expressing an Opinion

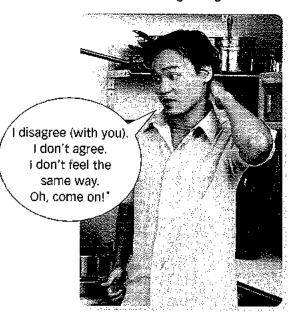








Disagreeing



^{* &}quot;Oh, come on!" is very informal.



Expressing Opinions Work in groups of three. Look at the nine topics below. Take turns giving your opinion on each topic like this:

Student A: Give your opinion about the topic. Give reasons.

Student B: Agree or disagree. Give reasons.

Student C: Agree or disagree with A or B. Give reasons.

Example

Bruce: I think watching TV is a waste of time. Most programs are stupid or boring.

Jack: I disagree with you. Many programs are useful—if you choose them carefully.

Peter: I agree with Bruce. There are so many better things to do than sit and watch TV.

1. violence on television

2. cigarette advertisements in magazines

3. magazine stories about private lives of famous people

4. high salaries of superstar athletes

high salaries of movie stars

6. low salaries of teachers

7. parents should supervise what their children watch on television

8. high cost of cable television

9. (choose your own topic)

Palit 2

News Report: An Airplane Crash



Strategy

Graphic Organizer: Four (Five) W's

To take notes on an event, use a four (or five) W's graphic organizer. Write questions about the situation asking *what, where, when, who,* (and possibly *why*). The answers to these four (or five) questions will give you a complete picture of the event.



- Prelistening Questions Before you listen, talk about accidents with a partner.
- 1. Have you ever seen an accident? Describe what happened.
- **2.** Imagine a news report about an airplane crash. Write four questions about it in the Four W's Graphic Organizer:

	Question	
What		?
Where		?
When		?
Who		?



Previewing Vocabulary Listen to the underlined words from the conversation. You will hear the underlined words in a news report. Then, write the letter of the correct definition beside each sentence.

(Note: Two of the words have very similar meanings!)

Sentences

- 1. _____ What was the top story on the evening news last night?
- 2. _____ The airplane left Chicago at 3:00 and landed in San Francisco at 8:00.
- 3. _____ My sports car is so small, I can only take one passenger.
- 4. _____ He had two serious <u>injuries</u>: a broken arm and a broken knee.
- 5. _____ She had to go to the hospital because she was hurt in the accident.
- **6.** Dina's car broke down on the highway and blocked traffic for an hour.
- 7. _____ I ran out of money, so I asked my parents for \$100.

Definitions

- a. person in the car other than the driver
- b. had no more
- stopped something from moving
- d. places where the body is damaged
- e. the first story in a news program
- f. experienced pain or damage to the body
- g. arrived; touched the ground





Listening for Main Ideas Listen to a news report about an airplane crash.



- A news report about an airplane crash.

 - 2. Which of the following is the main idea of the story?
 - a. An airplane crashed onto the highway and everyone died.
 - b. Two people saw the airplane crash and called the police.
 - c. An airplane landed on the highway.



Listening for Specific Information Listen again. This time, take notes about he following details.

- 1. Location of the plane:
- Number of passengers: _____

 Number of passengers injured: _____
- 4. Type of injuries: ____
- 5. Number of people injured on the ground:
- 6. Possible cause of crash:

Milabilonakiate



Summarizing Ideas Compare notes with a partner, Together, summarize the news report in your own words. As you speak, use your questions from Activity 1 and your notes from Activities 3 and 4 to help you remember.



- **Using Vocabulary** Discuss the following questions with a partner. Use the underlined vocabulary in your answers.
 - 1. Did you watch the news on TV last night? What was the top story?
- 2. If an airplane can't land because of bad weather, what can the pilot do?
- 3. On a long car trip, do you prefer to be the passenger or the driver? Why?
- **4.** Tell about some <u>injuries</u> you had when you were a child. Were you hurt while playing or while doing sports? Were you seriously hurt?
- 5. If you run out of money while on vacation, what can you do?
- 6. How do you feel when someone blocks traffic unnecessarily?



Summarizing News Reports Watch a news program the day before your class. Choose one of the reports in the news. Give the class a short summary of the report. Use simple words and focus on the key ideas only. Make a Five W's graphic organizer. Write questions and answers in it and use it during your presentation.

	Question	Answer	
What		?	
Where		?	
When		?	
Who		?	
Why		?	
	1		

Panis.

Strategies for Better Listening and Speaking

ENGERALE SYLESCHIEF LEFERY CHARLES





Focus on Testing

Using Context Clues Many tests such as the TOEFL® iBT measure your academic listening and speaking abilities. This activity, and others in the book, will develop your social and academic communication abilities, and provide a foundation for success on a variety of standardized tests. You will hear four commercials. Decide which product or service they advertise.

- 1. Listen to the beginning of each commercial. Then listen to the question.
- Stop the recording after each question and choose the product or service advertised.
- 3. In the Clues column, write the words that helped you choose your answer.
- 4. Listen to the last part of the commercial to hear the correct answer.

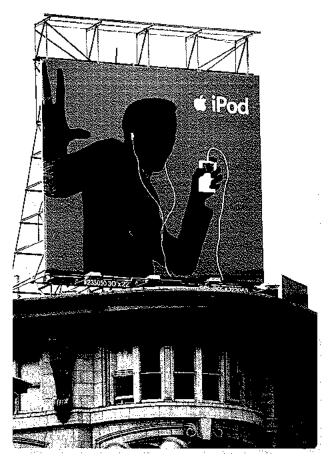
Answers 1. A soup B breakfast cereal C vitamins 2. A long distance calling plan B sleeping pill C cell phone company 3. A baby products B a used car C a new car 4. A breakfast food B TV magazine C sleeping pill



Discussing Advertisements In small groups, discuss the qualities of a good advertisement. Make a list.

1.	lt should be easy to notice.
2.	It should be funny, so we pay attention and remember it.
3.	
4.	
5.	

Look at the following advertisement. Does it have all the qualities you just listed? Discuss what you like and don't like about this ad.



≜ An advertisement on a billboard.

Bring examples of an interesting and a boring ad from a magazine or newspaper. Explain to your classmates why you chose these ads.

Part 4

Real-World Tasks: Television

Types of TV Programs Look at the types of television programs below. Give a example of each.

	pes of Shows talk show	Examples
b.	cartoon	
C.	game show	
d.	drama series	
e.	sitcom (situation comedy)	
f.	children's program	
g.	news program	
h.	documentary	

Look at the list of popular TV shows from the United States and England. Match them with the types of shows above. Write the letters on lines. If you don't know some of the shows, find information on the Internet. What other popular shows do you know? Write them in the chart.

- 1. _g_ CNN® International
- 2. ____ CSI
- 3. ____ Teletubbies
- 4. ____ Friends
- 5. ____ Who Wants to Be a Millionaire?
- 6. ____ The Simpsons
- 7. ____ Backyard Science
- 8. ____ Larry King Live



- Discussing a Program Guide Jennifer and her brother want to watch TV tonight. Before you listen, look at the TV guide on page 157 and answer these ques tions:
- 1. What's on Channel 2 at 7:00?
- 2. What time is the news on? What channels is it on?
- 3. Who will be the guests on the Oprah Winfrey show?

Now listen to the conversation. During each pause, fill in the missing information and circle the type of program. Compare your answers with classmates.

PRIME TIME MONDAY						
Channel	7:00 PM	7:30 PM	8:00 PM	8:30 РМ	9:00 РМ	9:30 РМ
2 KCBS	Baseball Live Sports		CSI Drama series		39th Annual (Music Awards Award show	
A NBC	Extra! Entertainment news magazine		Spiderman II Movie		Law and Order Crime drama	
7 KABC	(name of program) Game show/news/cartoon		The Oprah Winfrey Show Special guests: celebrity couples Talk show		News	
11 KTTV	Home Improvement Comedy	Home Improvement Comedy	(name of program) Documentary/talk show/movie			
13 KCOP	The Simpsons Comedy	King of the Hill Comedy	(name of program) Movie/news/cartoon			
20 TLC	Alias Crime drama				f program) rama series/sports	
24 CNN	Asia Today News show		Live from Washington News show	News	Larry King L Talk show	ive
25 ESPN	NFL Live Sports		Sports Center Sports news	T WHO		program) alk show/sports
53 FX	That 70's Show Comedy	¥	(name of program) Cartoon/ children's show/sitcom	Seinfeld	Mission Impossible Action adventure	Soccer Time Sports
						page 11

VI J

Describing a Favorite Show or Movie Tell a partner about your favorite T show or movie. To help you organize your description, make notes about the points listed below. Then complete the paragraph about your favorite TV show.

٦.	Kind of show (drama, talk show, comedy, etc.):
2.	Type of people in it (old friends, married couple, etc.):
3.	Situation (city police station, apartment building, etc.):
4.	Reasons you like it (funny characters, exciting story, educational, etc.):

My favorite TV show

I like to watch		It's a kind (
	about	They liv
in	and	I
	about	
I like		because sometimes it
	and other times it's	
I watch it every	to see what h	appens to the character
and how they		·



A scene from Star Trek, an American TV show.

Self-Assessment Log Check the words you learned in this chapter. **Nouns** Verbs □ average week □ run out of □ block land couch potato top story change channels turn down the volume injury 🖽 the TV channel surf turn on the TV ☐ waste of time ☐ hurt passenger turn the TV off remote control Check the things you did in this chapter. How well can you do each one? Very well Fairly well Not very well I can listen to and practice stress and reductions. Œ I can express my opinions. O. \Box I can take notes on a news report. O) I can summarize my notes. \Box I can guess meanings from context, I can talk about TV shows and advertisements. Write what you learned and what you liked in this chapter. In this chapter, ! learned ______ I liked ______



Social Life

intiscienter

Conversation:

Meeting Old Friends

Conversation:

Arranging a Match

Getting Meaning from Context: At a Party

Real-World Tasks:

Making Social Plans

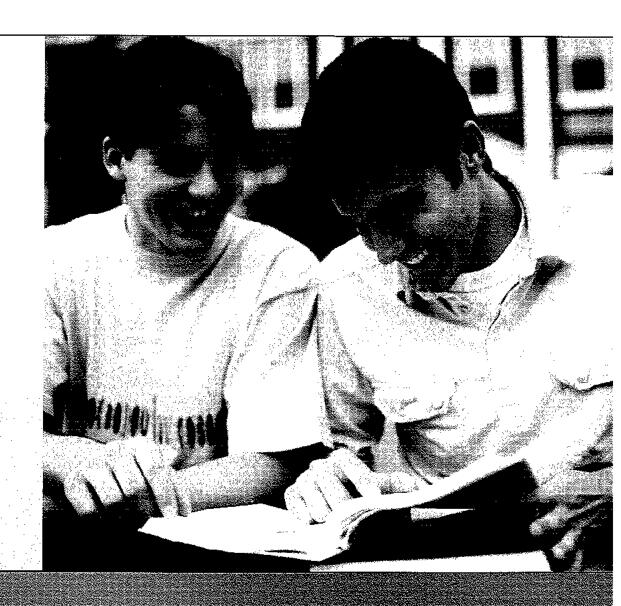
66 A friend to all is a friend to none. 35

-Greek prover



Connecting to the Topic

- 1 Look at the photo. Where are these people? What are they doing?
- 2 What types of activities do you like to do with your friends?
- 3. What are the qualities of a good friend?





Conversation: Meeting Old Classmates

designer volumente de



Prelistening Questions Talk about your oldest friends with a partner.



- Ming and Yolanda run into Dan.
 - 1. Look at the photo. Have Ming and Yolanda seen Dan recently? Did they expect to see him?
 - 2. How long have you known your closest friends? Since elementary school? Middle school? High school? College? After college?
 - **3.** Have you ever had a *reunion* with old friends? What did you talk about? Did you stay in touch after that?
 - 4. Have you ever run into an old friend by accident? Where and when?



Previewing Vocabulary Listen to these words and expressions from the conversation. Complete the sentences below the chart with the words and expressions. Then write the examples and the meanings of the expressions in the chart.

Expressions	Use of Words and Expressions in the Sentences	Meanings As Used Here
good at	"He has always been good at science."	He's able to understand science easily.
graduation		
keep in touch		
make sense		
on the road		
pre-med		
sales rep		
terrific		
be up to		

<u></u>	
1.	Dan plans to become a doctor because he has always been
	science.
2.	Ming: Hi, Dan. I haven't seen you in a while. What have you been
	?
	Dan: Not much. Just studying and going to school.
3.	I love your new car. It really looks
4.	I'm most of the time because my company needs me to travel a lot.
5.	Yolanda wants to go to medical school after college, so she's studying
	courses in college now.
	mar Considition 44

	with th	nem.
	me a n	ebrate my from high school, my parents bought ew computer. It will be great to have a new computer when I go to in the fall.
		n't to buy a car if you live five minutes from niversity.
	9. Yoland	la: I took this job because I am really good at selling things!
	Dan:	Oh! So you're a?
CD 4, Track 3	high school	ting for Main Ideas Dan is visiting his hometown. He runs into two of the classmates walking down the street. Close your book as you listen. Prepar hese questions.
	1. What is	s the main thing they discuss?
	2. Dan sa	ys he's been studying hard. What do the women think?
	3. At the	end of the conversation, what do they say they will do?
	Compare ar	nd discuss your answers with a partner.
0	🗿 Lìsten	ing for Details Listen again if necessary. Answer these questions.
	1 . When v	was the last time Dan saw Yolanda and Ming?
	2. What is	B Dan's major?
	3. Ming is	a sales rep. Where does Yolanda work?
	Stress	
CD 4, Track 4	stressed wo	ing for Stressed Words Listen to the conversation again. Some of the ords are missing. During each pause, repeat the phrase or sentence. Then files with words you hear.
	Yolanda:	Ming, look! I can't it! It's Dan. Hey Dan! How are you?
	Dan:	Yolanda? Ming? Wow! I haven't seen you since
		night!
	Ming:	I know. You look!
	Dan:	Thanks. So do!
	Ming:	So what have you been to?
	Dan:	Well, I go to Faber College.
	Yolanda:	? Do you it?

Dan:	Yeah,	But I've been	
	really hard.		
Ming:	you have		
Yolanda:	So, what's your major?		
Dan:	It's science.		
Ming:	Ah-h-h mak	es sense. You always	
	good at	and	
ъ.		1	
Dan:	Thanks. Anyway, what have	been up to?	
Ming:	Well, I'm a re	rep for a publishing company.	
Dan:	No! How do	you like that?	
Ming:	Oh, I it! I'm some interesting people.	on the road a lot, but I get to meet	
Dan:	That's And Yolanda?	how about,	
Yolanda:	I'm studying	at State College.	
Dan:	Wow—you can be my doctor! You science too. Well, it was great seen	always wereat ng you both. Let's keep in	
	from now or address.	. Email me sometime. Here's my	

Now read the conversation with two classmates. Practice stressing words correctly.



Using Vocabulary Discuss the following questions with a partner. Use the underlined vocabulary in your answers.

- 1. What have you been up to (during the past year)—besides studying English?
- **2.** Tell about a restaurant that is a <u>terrific</u> place to go for a dinner, in your opinion. Why is it so great?
- 3. Tell about something your friends or family might think you are good at.
- **4.** Do you keep in touch with any of your friends or teachers from when you were younger? Who?
- 5. Would you like a job that required you to be on the road 50 percent of the time?
- **6.** Give several reasons why it <u>makes sense</u> or doesn't <u>make sense</u> for students to wear uniforms in school.



INTONATION WITH EXCLAMATIONS





To express strong feelings (surprise, anger, happiness), we use exclamations. These are expressions that we pronounce with especially strong emphasis and with falling intonation at the end.

Examples

Wow!

That's great!

I can't believe it!

That's awful!



Pronouncing Exclamations Repeat the following exclamations from the conversation. Follow the stress and intonation patterns carefully.

- 1. Ming, look!
- 2. I can't believe it!
- 3. Wow! I haven't seen you since graduation night!
- 4. You look great!
- 5. So do you!
- 6. No kidding!
- 7. That's terrific!



Matching Statements and Responses Listen to these seven statements or questions. Choose the appropriate responses from the box and write their letters in the spaces. Use a different exclamation each time.

- a. That's amazing! How's she doing?
- b. Congratulations!
- c. That's disgusting!
- d. No way!
- e. You're kidding! What did you talk about?
- f. Not again!
- g. Oh no! That's awful
- 1. <u>a</u>
- 2. ____
- 3. ____
- 4.
- 5. ____
- 6. ____
- 7. ____



Practicing Exclamations Work in pairs. Student A should look at page 202. Student B should look at page 206.

RUMUSET STORESTATIONS

GIVING AND ACCEPTING COMPLIMENTS

In many places, or cultures, people give compliments to make other people feel comfortable, to be friendly, or to start a conversation. Look at these examples of giving and accepting compliments.

Giving Compliments	Accepting Compliments
Maria, your English is really improving.	Thanks. You're very kind.
Excuse me. Who cut your hair? I really like it.	Thank you.
I love the way you sing, Henry.	
You have a beautiful home, Mrs. Johnson.	Sa da you./You do too.

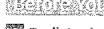


Giving and Accepting Compliments Practice giving and accepting compliments with your classmates as follows: Student A gives a compliment to Student B. Student B accepts the compliment and gives a compliment to Student C. Continue until everyone has given and received a compliment. Here are some topics you can give people compliments on:

- 1. an item of clothing or jewelry
- 2. a hairstyle
- 3. something someone did
- 4. a change or improvement someone made recently
- 5. something a person does well

Parti 2

Conversation: Arranging a Match





- Prelistening Questions Before you listen, talk about social life with a classmate.
- 1. Is socializing common in your culture or circle of friends? If yes, how do you meet people? If no, explain how you like to socialize with friends.
- 2. What are the most important things to look for in a husband or wife?
- **3.** Would you trust your family members (parents or brothers and sisters) to select a husband or wife for you? Why, or why not?



Listening for Main Ideas Listen to the conversation between Tanya and Meena. As you listen to their conversation, answer the following questions.

- 1. What does Tanya want to do for her friend Meena?
- 2. Does Tanya seem interested in learning about Meena's culture?



Taking Notes on Specific Information Listen to the conversation again. This time, take notes about Meena's culture and its views on marriage.

Ways to meet a husband:		
For Meena, the right man must be:		
Meena's view on love:		
Possible advantages of this kind of	marriage:	





Summarizing Ideas Work with a partner. Take turns explaining Meena's beliefs about a good marriage match. Use your notes from Activity 3 to help you.



Discussing Customs Work in small groups. Talk about customs. Think about your own or your friends' experiences. Explain your answers.

- 1. In your culture, at what age are you allowed to invite your friends home?
- 2. Is it OK to ask someone you have just met to visit you at home?
- **3.** Where do married couples in your culture go out together: to a movie? a restaurant? a concert?
- 4. When a couple goes out, who usually pays? Who should pay?
- **5.** What do you think are some of the most usual, or unusual, ways or places that people in different cultures meet new friends?



Meeting Old Friends These people haven't met each other since high school graduation, and have just met again at a reunion. Read the notes about each person carefully. In small groups talk about what they discuss and if they still have common interests. Do you think the three men can still be friends? Do you think the three women can still be friends?

Men

Bruce-24

Law major; very busy in new job at big law firm.

Under a lot of stress

Likes tennis, and just started golf.

Enjoys spicy foods.

Tom-24

Business major; might start MBA soon.

Family has small export business.

Serious.

Likes privacy and quiet places.

Married with two kids.

Frank-24

Communications major, but is now learning animation.

Part-time waiter—doesn't earn much

money.
Likes trying new foods, but eats a lot of

junk food when busy.

His mother often cooks for him.







Women

Lisa-22

Majored in biology; studied one year in Australia.

Part-time job in pharmacy now, might continue for Masters degree.

Confident, funny.

Loves shopping for expensive shoes.

Married with two kids

Marta—21

Studied Art History; is an artist who sells some of her paintings.

Lives with her sister.

Vegetarian who likes cooking healthy meals. Loves films, cooking, and travel.

Anna-21

Accounting major with job offers at two strong companies.

Shy, but friendly and kind.

Likes reading and jogging.

Gets take-out dinners often.







Filling Out a Questionnaire

Many new students from different countries are in the English Language Center. You are a new member of the English Club. New members usually fill out a questionnaire to explain who they are and what kind of senior student they'd like to meet. Senior students with similar interests to those of new members become their mentors who help them with their English classes.

Pretend that you are going to sign up with the English Club and follow these instructions.

 Fill out the application, but don't write your real name at the top. Use an imaginary name. You can answer truthfully, or have fun and make up pretend answers.
 Your teacher will collect all the applications and put them on the board or wall.

alika aliah dia kata akta akta bahara bahar bahar bahar bahar bahar bahar bahar bahar kata bahar bahar bahar b

2. The teacher will hold up each application and ask, for example, "This application is from Mr. Cool. Can you all guess who this is?" (Students try to guess.) "Would you like to meet him? Well let's meet him now."

- 3. Finally, "Mr. Cool" will stand up and reveal his identity.
- 4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 for all the applications.

ELC English Club

Name	Age:	_ □ Male 🗅 Fen	nale
ME:			
School major	or favorite class .		
Future plans o	or dreams (be acc	countant at big c	ompany, start a restaurant, get
married and h	ave children, etc.):	
Good habits (very loyal, exerci	se daily, etc.): _	
Bad habits (ea	t junk food, spen	d a lot of time o	n the computer, etc.):
Finish these se	entences:		
My friends say	I am very a).	<u></u>	b)
Two things tha	ıt make me happy	y are , a)	b)
Two things tha	ıt make me angry	are a)	b)
My hobbies ar	nd interests inclu	ıde , (video ga	nmes, tennis, music, etc.)
Three things I	can't live without	t, are: (nice shoe	s, my cat, travel, etc.)
1)	2)		3)
		***	and the second of the second o
MY FUTURE			
			years old, and have these :
Future plans o	r dreams: ——	<u></u>	

ood habits: (very loyal, exercise daily, etc.):	
Not have these) Bad habits: (eat junk food, watch too much TV,	etc.):
(1	
lobbies and interests such as (football, travel, etc.):	
ioobles and micresis such as (nootban, travel, etc.).	
CONTROL TO THE STATE OF THE STA	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	



Strategies for Better Listening and Speaking

GGGanalergaly(Greenenggereenen Genenuterge



Focus on Testing



Using Context Clues Many tests such as the TOEFL® iBT measure your academic listening and speaking abilities. This activity, and others in the book, will develop your social and academic communication abilities, and provide a foundation for success on a variety of standardized tests. Listen to five conversations that take place at a party.

- 1. Listen to the first part of each conversation. Then listen to the question.
- 2. Stop the recording and choose the best answer to each question.
- 3. In the Clues column, write the words that helped you choose your answer.
- **4.** Start the recording again. Listen to the last part of the conversation to hear the correct answer.

Answers Clues 1. (A) The man doesn't like the town. The man is new in town. The woman used to live in the town. The office manager hurt his neck. The man works with the woman. The man and woman used to work together. **3.** (A) The man is worried about Tony. The woman is worried about Tony. C Tony went home. 4. (A) The man and the woman will leave the party in forty-five minutes. B The man and woman had a misunderstanding. The man and woman came to the party together.

MENTAL CRYPS



Discussing Birthday, Graduation or Dinner Parties Answer the following questions with a small group.

- 1. Describe a typical, enjoyable party for people in your age group. Think of the kind of parties you might go to. Include the following information.
 - a. Where is the party held?
 - b. What time does the party start?
 - c. What food is served?
 - d. What kind of entertainment is there?
 - e. Do you bring a gift for the host?
 - f. When does the party end?
- 2. Why do you think some young people like to have a birthday party or a graduation party?
- **3.** Some young people like to smoke cigarettes. What is your opinion of this activity?
- **4.** The poster below is from an advertising campaign against smoking. Have you seen posters like this before? Do posters like these stop people from smoking?



175



Real-World Tasks: Entertainment

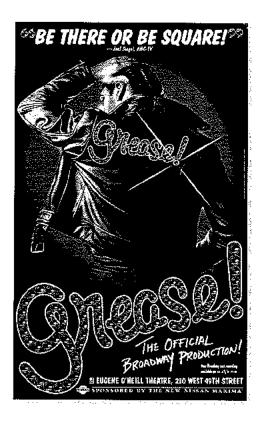


Prelistening Discussion Look at the advertisements for entertainment below and on page 177. Answer the questions with a small group.

1. What type of entertainment is each poster advertising?

a movie a live music show a classical music concert an opera

- 2. Discuss which of these things you might like to do tonight. Decide on one activity with your group.
- 3. Discuss which activity you chose with the class.

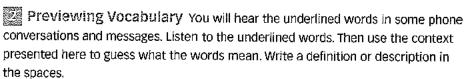








CD 4, Track 11 04



Sentences 1. A: What's showing at the Coronet theater tonight? B: A sci-fi movie with Tom Cruise.	Definitions sci-fi movie:
A: Tom Cruise in a sci-fi movie—sounds exciting! What are the sho	w times? show times:
 2. A: Want to go see some live music at the Sunset Grill tonight? B: Who's singing? A: A woman named Sarah Waggoner. She's supposed to be great. B: OK. What does it cost? A: There's a cover charge of 15 dollars. B: Sorry, that's too expensive for me. 	live music: cover charge:
3. When you buy tickets to entertainment events on the Internet, you of to pay a service charge of two dollars or more. If you order tickets be you can get them in the mail or you can pick them up at the box offithe event begins.	y phone, service charge:
4. If you want to have dinner at a well-known restaurant, it's best to make a reservation before you go. If you don't have a reservation, you may have to wait for a long time when you get there.	make a reservation:

With a partner, role-play Conversations 1 and 2.



Taking Notes Yolanda and Ming plan to go out this weekend. Ming is making phone calls to get more information about three entertaining events. Listen to the calls and take notes on the important information.

Call 1		
Event:		 <u>.</u>
Call 2		
Place:		 <u>.</u>
Cost:		
Menu:		
Reservations:		
	(Number of people)	(Time)
Call 3		
Place:		 ···
Band:		 ,_,
Price (total):		
Remember to bring		



Using Vocabulary Discuss the following questions with a partner. Use the underlined vocabulary in your answers.

- 1. Do you like <u>sci-fi</u> (science fiction) movies? Give an example of a movie you enjoyed.
- 2. Do you ever go to restaurants to hear <u>live music</u>? Tell about the last time you went. What was the <u>cover charge</u> to get into the restaurant? Did you have to make a reservation?
- 3. Have you ever ordered tickets to an event by phone? What was the <u>service charge</u>? Did your tickets come by mail, or did you pick them up at the box office?
- 4. How can you find out the show times for an event you want to attend?



Role-Play Work in pairs. Student A should look at page 202. Student B should look at page 206.

Self-Assessment Log Check the words you learned in this chapter. **Nouns** Verbs Adjectives **Expressions** □ box office □ be up to good at on the road cover charge keep in touch □ terrific graduation make a reservation □ live music make sense □ pre-med □ sales rep □ sci-fi movie service charge show times vacancy Check the things you did in this chapter. How well can you do each one? Very well Fairly well Not very well I can listen to and practice stress. Ш I can talk about friends. Ò I can express strong feelings with exclamations. I can give and accept compliments. I can take notes on a conversation. ū I can summarize my notes. I can talk about different customs. I can guess meanings from context. ⊐ I can talk about going out to movies and restaurants. \Box \Box Write about what you learned and liked in this chapter. In this chapter, f learned ______



Sports

Conversation:

Explaining a Sport

Speech:

A Wrestler

Getting Meaning from Context: Which Sport Is It?

Real-World Tasks:

Radio Sports Report

if I've failed over and over again in my life and that is why I succeed.

> —Michael Jorda: American basketball player (1963-



Connecting to the Topic

- Look at the photo, What's happening?
- What are your favorite sports to watch? Why?
- What qualities do you think someone needs in order to become a successful athlete? Explain,

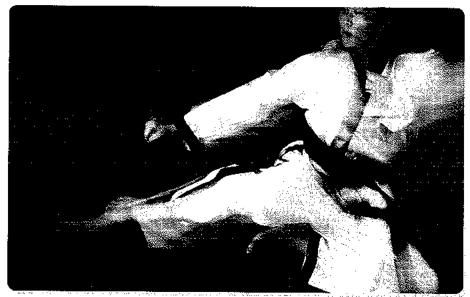


Part 1

Conversation: Explaining a Sport



- Prelistening Questions Look at the photo. Answer the questions with a partne
 - 1. What do you know about martial arts?
 - 2. Why do people want to learn such sports?
 - 3. What experience, if any, do you have with them?



An athlete practicing Karate

Verbs

Nouns



Previewing Vocabulary Listen to the words and phrases from the conversation. Complete the sentences with the words and phrases.

balance	focus	stretch	
confidence	get in shape	warm up	
flexibility	get into		
1. My uncle ha	sn't exercised for m	any years and he has g	ained a lot of weight.
But now he	wants to	······································	
2. Some baske up to touch		np and	their arms
Bicyclists no their bikes.	eed good	if they d	lon't want to fall off
	women who are sh arn to play a sport v	y often develop more _ well.	

5.	To do yoga or gymnastics, you need greatbody in difficult positions.	to move your
6.	If you have a lot of fun doing a new sport, it's easy to	it.
7	To hoome a reinnen ren must see enterte de la ce	. •

7. To become a winner, you must concentrate your vision and effort in one direction. You really need to _______ on your goal.

8. Professional tennis players usually ______ for several minutes to get their bodies ready to start to play a match.

Tagitani.



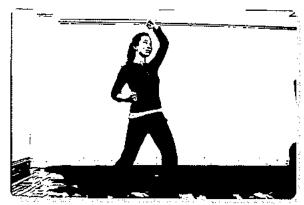
Listening for Main Ideas Bruce, Peter, and Kenji are together to practice some martial arts. Close your book as you listen. Prepare to answer these questions:

- 1. What sport will Bruce, Peter, and Kenji practice?
- 2. What part of the world does this sport come from?
- 3. What are some differences between the two sports they discuss?
- 4. How has this sport helped Bruce?

Compare and discuss your answers with a partner.









♣ Punch

	1	1. Bruce is trying to teach his friends Karate.				
	2	2. Tae Kwon Do uses more kicks than Karate does.				
	3	3. Kenji doesn't have any experience with Karate.				
	4	Peter isn't very interested in learning such sports.				
	Z11.5					
CD 4, Track 15	Listening for Stressed Words Listen to the conversation again. Some of the stressed words are missing. During each pause, repeat the phrase or sentence. Then fil in the blanks with the words you hear.					
	Bruce:	OK. Let's and				
		. We've got to work on and				
	Peter:	So, Bruce, when did you this				
		Karate stuff?				
	Kenji:	Karate's Bruce's showing us Tae Kwon Do, and				
	.	it's Korean.				
		So, what's the ?				
	Bruce:	Tae Kwon Do uses of different				
		moves. But Karate well, Kenji, it sounds like				
		know something about Karate.				
	Kenji:	Yeah—Karate uses more and				
		too. Maybe you've seen athletes break wooden with				
		punches. You know, like I learned when I was				
		in				
	Peter:	That's I wish could do that.				
		So, Bruce, why did you get into Tae Kwon Do?				
	Bruce:	I had a Korean friend in school, and he said it could				
		help me get in my				
		confidence. So I it, and I really liked it.				
	Peter:	It looks like you				

Now read the conversation with two other classmates. Practice stressing words correctly

Listening for Details Listen again if necessary. Write T if a statement is true

and F if it is false.





DROPPING THE "H" SOUND

The "h" sound is not pronounced when a word is: unstressed AND in the middle of a phrase

or

unstressed AND at the end of a sentence

The "h" sound is often dropped in pronouns, and have/has/had. For example:

Unreduced "h"

Dropped "h"

Has he won yet?

Has 'e won yet?

I don't know how to find her.

I don't know how to find 'er.

In the following examples, the "h" is not dropped because it is in a stressed word:

Can I help you?

I hope so.





Listening for the Dropped "h" Listen to the following sentences. Repeat them after the speaker.

Unreduced Pronunciation

- 1. I don't know what to get her.
- 2. Give it to him.
- 3. Is he winning?
- 4. What's his team's name?
- 5. Where have you been?
- 6. Susan has finished her workout.
- 7. He helped her get tickets.

Dropped "h" Pronunciation*

- 1. I don't know what to get 'er.
- 2. Give it to 'im.
- 3. Is 'e winning?
- 4. What's 'is team's name?
- 5. Where 'uv you been?
- Susan 'as finished 'er workout.
- 7. He helped 'er get tickets.





Comparing Unreduced and Reduced Pronunciation The following sentences come from the conversation. Listen for the difference between the unreduced and reduced pronunciation. Repeat both forms after the speaker.

Unreduced Pronunciation

Reduced Pronunciation*

1. We've got to work on balance.

2. Why did you get into Tae Kwon Do? Why didja get into Tae Kwon Do?

3. And he said it could help me . . .

4. It looks like you succeeded.

5. I'm still working on it.

We've gotta work on balance.

An 'e said it could help me . . .

It looks likeya succeeded.

I'm still workin' on it.

^{*} Note: The underlined forms are not acceptable spellings in written English.



Listening for Reductions Listen to the following conversation between roommates. You'll hear the reduced forms of some words. Repeat each sentence durir the pause. Then write the unreduced forms of the missing words in the blanks.

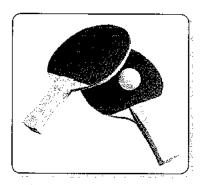
Jane:	Hi, Helen. Are going out?
Helen:	Yeah, I'm going to the football game. My brother's playing and I thought
	I'd watch come
Jane:	I really can't I study. But can
	do me a favor?
Helen:	OK.
Jane:	get me tickets for the girls' soccer game
	next Saturday? My cousin Sue just made the team.
Helen:	Sure—that's so cool. What's position?
Jane:	I'm not sure—I'm call,
	and I can ask, if you want.
Helen:	don't have to—just wish luck.
With a par	rtner, read the conversation. Practice the reduced pronunciation.

Zarcerazonninezeri

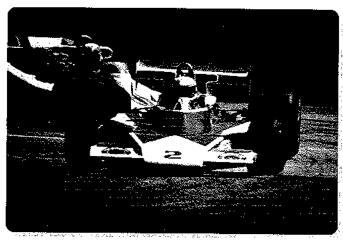


Reviewing Vocabulary Discuss the following questions with a partner. Use the new vocabulary in your discussion.

- 1. What's your favorite sport, or game, and how did you get into it?
- 2. Why is it important to warm up before beginning to play a game or match?
- **3.** Which activity do you think helps you get in shape the best: playing ping pong or racing cars?
- **4.** What are a few sports for which you really need <u>flexibility</u> and you have to stretch a lot?
- 5. Can you think of a sport that especially requires very good focus and balance
- 6. How can playing a sport build a person's confidence?



Ping pong paddles and ball



Racing cars

Pronunciation



THE NORTH AMERICAN "T"

In some words, speakers of North American English pronounce the "t" between two vowels as a quick /d/ sound:

Karate's (kerahdeez) Japanese.

This pronunciation change does not happen in British English.

Contrast:

Words	North American English Pronunciation	British English Pronunciation	
pretty	priddy*	pritty*	
got it	goddit*	gottit*	

^{*}Note that the words marked with * are not correct written forms.



Listening for the North American "t" Listen and repeat the following examples.

- 1. We've go \underline{t} a work on balance and flexibili \underline{t} y. ("go \underline{d} da") ("flexibili \underline{d} y")
- 2. It also helps you focus. ("id")
- 3. Let's get star \underline{t} ed ("star \underline{d} ed")
- Pronouncing the North American "t" Work in pairs. Student A should look at page 203. Student B should look at page 207.

Falst 2

Speech: A Wrestler



Sentences



- Prelistening Questions Before you listen, talk about sports with a partner.
 - 1. Which sports are most popular in your country? Why?
 - 2. How much do you know about the sport of wrestling? For example, what are the rules, what are the different kinds, etc?



Previewing Vocabulary Listen to the underlined words from the speech. The write the letter of the correct definition beside each sentence.

Definitions

1. ____ Our soccer team competed against a. to win against another another team and won. player 2. ____ My classmate and I played a tennis b. the other player or team match and then watched a soccer in a competition match on TV. c. to make points in a 3. ____ John was so happy because he beat sport or game his father at a card game. d. to play a sport and try We lost the basketball game because to win our opponents played much better. e. one person, not a 5. ____ Nobody scored during the game, so member of a group the result was 0:0. f. a game or contest 6. _____ Since the game was tied 2:2, they had g. extra time added at the to play overtime until one team end of a sports game finally won.

7. _____ Swimming is a great sport because

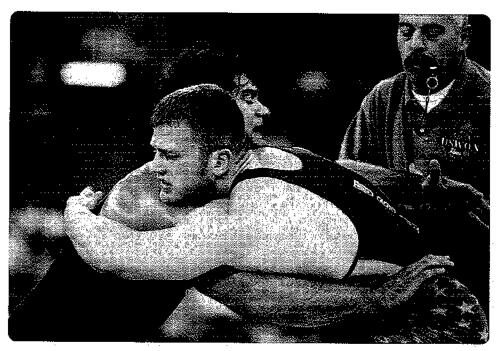
or as a team member.

you can participate as an individual





Taking Notes on Main Ideas Listen to the speech. Take notes in the space below. Focus on the main ideas about the speaker and her sport.



△ The sport of wrestling is one of the oldest in history.

							·-
			 	•••	- ·		
 		 				······································	

 •		 	 	 -			
 -		 	 	_			
 	.		 				

Strategy

Hints for Taking Notes

It is easier to remember information if you organize your notes into an *outline*. An outline separates main ideas and details in a clear way with numbers and letters. An outline has key words and phrases—not complete sentences.

Reviewing Notes Look at your notes in Activity 3. Separate the main ideas from the details and write them in the outline below.

1.	Introduction
	A. Info about Terri:
	B. Info about wrestling:
Н.	Why chose wrestling:
11.	Rules:
ı,	Why likes it:
ν,	vvily and a



Listening for Specific Information Listen again while you look at the outline. Make corrections or fill in missing information.



Summarizing Ideas Compare notes with a partner. Summarize the information in your outline. Based on your summary, work with a partner and role-play an imaginan interview with Terri.

Example

Reporter: When did you start wrestling?

Terri: When I was 12.

Reporter: Why did you choose this sport?

Terri: Because my brothers used to wrestle and I...



Reviewing Vocabulary Ask and answer the following questions with a partner. Use the underlined vocabulary in your answers.

- 1. Do wrestlers still compete in the Olympics today?
- 2. Do you prefer to compete in sports as an individual or as part of a team? Why?
- 3. In your opinion, should amateurs compete only against each other or also against professional opponents in the following sports? Why?
 - swimming
- soccer
- wrestling
- a golf
- running *
- skiing

TALKING ABOUT SPORTS

With some sports, you can add -ing or -er to describe the activity or the athlete.

ACT(ON (verb)	SPORT (noun)	PERSON (noun)
wrestle	wrestling	wrestler
ice-skate	îce-skating	ice-skater
surf	surfing	surfer
box	boxing	boxer

Example Surfing is my favorite sport. I surf every summer. All my friends are surfers.

Some sports only have noun forms. These sports follow the verbs play or do.

Example play tennis

do gymnastics

play volleyball

do karate

Talking About Sports Look at these photos. Describe each photo using the correct noun or verb.

Example These basketball players are playing basketball.



≜ Basketball



▲ Tennis



Wrestling



Football

Part 3

Strategies for Better Listening and Speaking

COLUMN CONTRACTOR CONT



- Prelistening Questions Look at the pictures below. Name each sport and answer these questions with a partner.
 - 1. Compare the sports in each group: how are they similar or different?
 - 2. Which of these can you do without any equipment?
 - 3. Which of these sports do you think is the oldest?



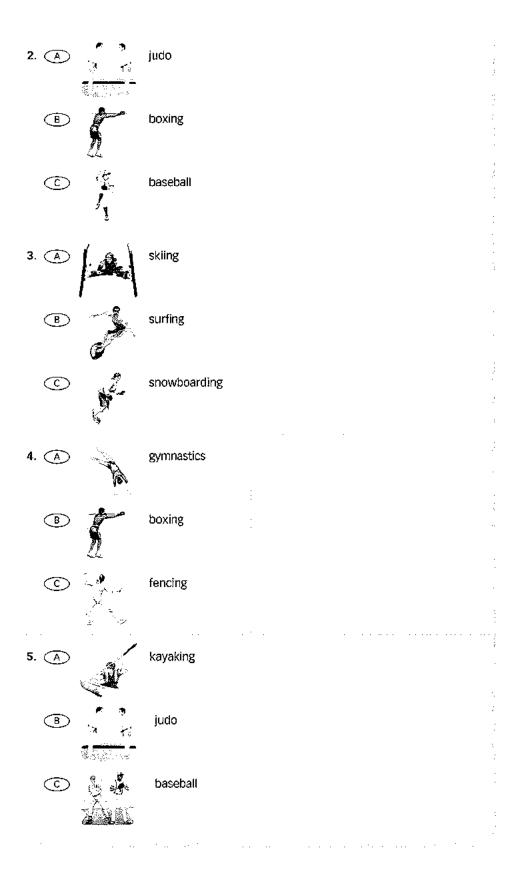
Focus on Testing



Using Context Clues Many tests such as the TOEFL® iBT measure your academic listening and speaking abilities. This activity, and others in the book, will develop your social and academic communication abilities and provide a foundation for success on a variety of standardized tests. Listen to people describe various sports.

- 1. Listen to each description.
- 2. Stop the recording after each description.
- 3. Choose the best answer for each item.
- 4. In the Ciues column, write the words that helped you.

Answers Clues swimming kayaking surfing







Twenty Questions Play the guessing game "Twenty Questions" by following these steps:

- 1. Divide into two teams.
- 2. Choose a player to represent your team. This person must think of a sport or a famous athlete.
- 3. Members of the other team ask Yes/No questions about the sport or athlete and to guess the answer. Each member can ask one question and make one guess at his/her turn.
- 4. The player answers the questions with a simple Yes or No.
- 5. If the other team guesses the answer in 20 clues or less, it wins and gets one poin
- 6. The winning team selects a player for the next turn.
- 7. If a team can't guess in 20 questions (or guesses the wrong answer), the opposite team gets a point and can select another player to think of a sport or athlete.

Example

A: Is it a sport?

B: Yes.

A: Is it a winter sport?

B: No.

A: Do you need any special equipment?

B: Yes....



Real-World Tasks: Following Sports News



- Prelistening Questions Discuss these questions with a partner.
- **1.** Which sports or games have you watched "live" at a stadium or other location? Which sports have you watched on television? Which way is better? Why?
- 2. Have you ever listened to a game on the radio? Is this enjoyable? Why, or why not?
- **3.** Do you follow any sports, teams, or players through television news, newspapers, magazines, or the Internet? Explain.



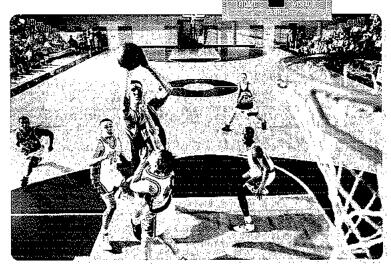
Previewing Vocabulary Listen to the words below. Then test your understanding of the words. Working with a partner, describe or explain each picture by using the correct forms of the words under each picture. Check answers with classmates.

Nouns	Verbs	Adjective	Expressions
loser	lose/lost	close	It was a tie!
rival	win/won		It was a close game.
score			What was the score?
set			



tie winner

Win/won/winner lose/lost/loser rival



close the score a tie



Sports News on the Radio Look at the chart about sports. Listen to the Faber College radio sports reporters. As you listen, fill in the missing information you hear about each game or sport.



Sport Men's basketball	Players of Teams Faber vs. State College	Results / Scores Faber lost: 76 – 72
	Faber vs. Hamilton College	
		Won all 3 games: 1: 2: 21 – 18 3:
Tennis	Mary Johnson vs.	-
Tournament		
Tennis	vs. Lisa Kim	
Women's soccer		

ABSTRADARING PROPERTIES

GIVING AND UNDERSTANDING INSTRUCTIONS

When giving instructions, use signal words to make sure your explanation is clear.



Ask questions to make sure your listener understood you.



When following instructions, ask for clarification.





Sports Instructions Use the expressions from the list on page 197 as you plathese games.

Game 1

1. Form groups (3 to 5 students). Each group writes a set of simple instructions, or rules, for playing a sport or game.

Example (surfing) First carry the board into the ocean.... Then lie down o the surfboard.... Next swim (or, paddle) out to some waves.... Turn around to the beach.... Now wait for a big wave.... Swim fast toward the beach. Finally, stand up on your surfboard.

- 2. Then cut up the instructions into separate sentences.
- 3. Give the mixed-up sentences to another group to put in correct order.
- 4. When you're done, check the answers.

Game 2

- Form groups (3 to 5 students). With your group, write a set of instructions for playing a sport. Memorize the instructions. Each group slowly tells the instructions to the other groups, without saying the name of the sport.
- 2. The group that guesses the name of the sport first wins 1 point. After each group has explained their sport, the group with the most points wins.

Example First, throw the ball up. Then hit it with your paddle. Try to hit the ball onto the table, then over the net. Next, the other player tries to hit the ball back to you. Continue to hit the ball over the net. If you can't hit it over the net, and onto the table, then you might lose a point (Answer: Ping Pong).

Teaching or Coaching Your Classmates: Homework Project

At Home:

Write down several simple steps for any sport you know. Practice explaining and showing these steps.

In Class:

If possible, bring in some sports equipment, like a ball or tennis racket, to help you describe your sport. Give instructions to try to teach your classmates the sport. Remember to check for understanding.

Learners: Remember to ask for help if instructions aren't clear.

Self-Assessment Log Check the words you learned in this chapter. Nouns Verbs Adjectives Expressions □ balance □ beat □ close What was the confidence score? compete Adverbs □ flexibility □ focus □ It was a tie! overtime □ individual get in shape □ It was a close □ loser get into game. □ match □ lose opponent score □ rival □ stretch □ score warm up □ set win □ tennis match □ tie winner Check the things you did in this chapter. How well can you do each one? Very well Fairly well Not very well I can listen to and practice stress and reductions. I can listen to and pronounce the North American "t." I can talk about sports. I can take notes on a speech. I can summarize my notes. I can guess meanings from context. I can give and understand instructions. \Box

Write what you learned and what you liked in this chapter.

In this chapter.

learned _____

I liked _____

Pairwork Activities for Student A



Reviewing Vocabulary page 8

- 1. Questions: Ask the following questions. Your partner will choose the best respons from his or her list.
 - 1. Do you think it is OK to stop by a friend's house without calling first?
 - 2. What classes are you going to take after this one?
 - 3. When did you come over from Taiwan?
- **2.** Answers: Now change roles. Listen to your partner ask you three questions. Choose the correct response from the list below for each question.
 - a. No kidding! You must be very healthy!
 - b. Yi-Lun sounds Chinese to me. And Hyun? That sounds Korean.
 - c. Some family members and school friends call me ______

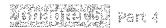
Talking About Seasons page 35

		Student A		
	Winter	Spring	Summer	Fall
Months	December-		June-	
	<u>February</u>		June- August	
Weather		warm		cool
			humid	cloudy
			sunny	
	snowy			
	wet			
	gray			

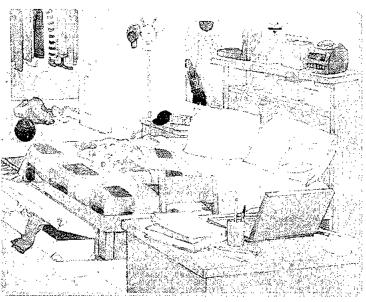


Using Vocabulary page 88

- 1. Questions: Ask the following questions. Your partner will choose the best response from his or her list.
 - 1. In what situations do you feel stressed out?
 - 2. In your community, can <u>landlords</u> <u>raise</u> the rent any time, as much as they want? Does the government control the rent?
 - 3. Is it <u>pretty</u> easy to find <u>vacancies</u> for apartments in your neighborhood? Why, or why not?
- Answers: Now change roles. Listen to your partner ask you three questions. Choose the correct response for each question. (Use one or more choices inside the parentheses or use your own answer.)
 - a. Yes, because (dormitory food is terrible, parents bought a new house, going to college)
 - No, because (live with my family, like my roommates, rent is very low)
 - **b.** Furnished (host family's house has furniture, dormitory has furniture, parents' house)
 - Unfurnished (my first apartment, usually unfurnished in my town)
 - c. (small size is convenient—easy to clean; too small—can't invite friends over, not enough room for all my stuff)



Comparing Pictures page 99



▲ Picture A



Practicing Exclamations page 167

1. Questions: You want to go to the movie Gladiator Reborn. Phone the theater and get some information about it. Your partner will choose the best response from hi or her list. Useful expressions What time is _____ showing? How long is the movie? When does start? What's the address of the theater? How much are the tickets? Where can I park? 2. Answers: Now change roles. You work for Ticket Express, an agency that sells tickets for a variety of cultural events. Your partner will phone you to order tickets to the show, The Lion King, at the Greek Theater. Here is the information yo will need: Show time: 8:30 P.M. Ticket prices: \$20, \$30, \$50. The \$20 tickets are sold out. There is a service charge of \$2.50 for each ticket ordered by phone. Ticket pickup: At the box office one hour before show time. Useful expressions The show begins at . . . There is a service charge . . . The (show) is sold out. You can pick up your tickets at ... Kalinialij Part 4



5 Role-Play page 178

Read your partner one statement or question from the list below. Your partner will respon with an appropriate exclamation. Then your partner will read one of his or her statements, and you will respond with an appropriate exclamation. Take turns.

- 1. I got 100% on the last grammar test.
- 2. Do you like my new haircut?
- 3. Yesterday my dog was hit by a car.
- 4. I got free tickets to the _____ _____ cup final. (Fill in the name of a cup final.)
- 5. (Make your own statement or question.)



Pronouncing the North American "t" page 187

- 1. Questions: Ask the following questions. Your partner will answer with a word containing the North American "t":
 - 1. When are you going to see the basketball game?
 - 2. Where was the Mexican soccer match?
 - 3. Should I buy this sweater?
 - 4. I called my tennis partner, but she isn't home. What should I do?
- 2. Answers: Now change roles. Listen to and answer your partner's questions with one of these words or phrases:
 - a British sport better hit it mail it in I try to play golf.

Pairwork Activities for Student B



Reviewing Vocabulary page 8

- 1. Answers: Listen to your partner ask you three questions. Choose the correct response from the list below.
 - a. I came over to the United States three years ago.
 - b. To be polite, it's better to call your friend before you stop by.
 - c. After I take this English class, I want to take some business classes and may! try to get an MBA.
- 2. Questions: Now change roles. Ask the following questions. Your partner will choos the best response from his or her list.
 - What does your family call you?
 - 2. Can you believe I ran 10 kilometers this morning?
 - 3. My new classmates are Hyun, Roberto and Yi-Lun. Roberto sounds Spanish. Where do you think Hyun and Yi-Lun are from?





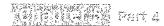
Talking About Seasons page 35

		Student B		
	Winter	Spring	Summer	Fall
Months		March- May		September November
Weather	cold		hot	_
	rainy	cool		
	cloudy	rainy		windy
				rainy

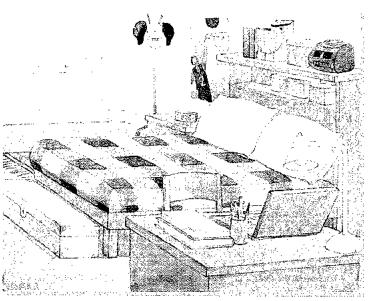


Using Vocabulary page 88

- 1. Answers: Listen to your partner ask you three questions. Choose the correct response for each question.
 - a. Yes, because (many new apartments, rent is very reasonable)
 No, because (rent is very high, not enough apartments, need help of agency)
 - **b.** The landlord can raise the rent ______ (once a year, whenever he wants, only with government permission)
 - c. Whenever I (move/pay bills/look for a roommate) I feel . . .
- 2. Questions: Ask the following questions. Your partner will choose the best response from his or her box.
 - 1. What are the advantages and disadvantages of a studio apartment?
 - 2. Are you planning to move out of your present home soon? Why or why not?
 - 3. When you first moved into your present home, was it <u>furnished</u> or <u>unfurnished</u>? Why?



Comparing Pictures page 99



♣ Picture B

Practicing Exclamations page 167

1. Answers: You work at the Sunset Theater, Your partner will call you for some ticke information. Use this information to answer your partner's questions. (If you don't know an answer, make something up.)

Movie: Gladiator Reborn

Location: Sunset Theater, at the corner of Sunset St. and King's Road

Show times: 4, 7, and 10 RM.

Ticket prices: \$6.00 before 5 P.M.; \$10.00 after 5 P.M.

Useful expressions

There's a show at . . . We're located at . . . Show times are . . . Tickets cost . . .

2. Questions: Now change roles. You are going to call Ticket Express, an agency that sells tickets to sports and cultural events. You want to buy two tickets to the show The Lion King, at the Greek Theater on the night of August 10.

Useful expressions

I'd like to order . . . Where can I pick up the tickets? How much are the tickets? What time does the show begin?

Do you have student tickets?



5 Role-Play page 178

Read your partner one statement or question from the list below. Your partner will respon with an appropriate exclamation. Then your partner will read one of his or her statements, and you will respond with an appropriate exclamation. Take turns,

- Somebody stole my brand-new bicycle.
- 2. I got accepted for next year at ___ (Fill in the name of a university.)
- What do you think of the food at _____ (Fill in the name of a terrible restaurant or place to eat.)
- 4. Today is my birthday.
- 5. (Make your own statement or guestion.)



Pronouncing the North American "t" page 187

1. Answers: Listen to and answer your partner's questions with a word or phrase containing the North American "t":

call her later

try it on

Mexico City

Saturday

- 2. Questions: Now change roles. Ask your partner these questions:
 - 1. What do you try to do every weekend?
 - 2. What should I do with my completed application?
 - 3. What is the opposite of worse?
 - 4. What kind of game is cricket?
 - 5. What do players do with a golf ball?

Audioscript

বিভিচ্ন বিশ্বনিত্র Academic Life Around the World

Part 1 Conversation: Meeting New Friends

Listening for Main Ideas page 5

Listening for Details page 5

Listening for Stressed Words page 6

Jack: Hi. How are you doing?

Peter: Hi. You're . . . Jack, right?

Jack: Yeah. And, sorry, you're . . . ?

Peter: Peter. Peter Riley.

Jack: Oh, yeah, we met on campus last week. Peter, this is my friend, Bruce Lee. He's just

moved into the building. **Peter:** Hi, Bruce Lee.

Bruce: Nice to meet you. You can just call me

Bruce. Lee's my last name.

Peter: Oh. Lee. That sounds . . .

Bruce: Chinese.

Peter: Oh. So, you're from . . .

Bruce: ... from San Francisco. My parents came over from Hong Kong before I was born.

Peter: Oh, that's cool. Actually, uh, I was thinking of taking Chinese this term. Maybe you could help me.

Bruce: Well, my Chinese really isn't very good ...

Jack: Uh, listen, Peter. We're really hungry. Do you want to get something to eat with us?

Peter: Sorry, I can't. I have to go meet my new classmates.

Jack: Oh, OK. Well, stop by sometime. I'm up in 212.

Peter: Hey, I'm on the same floor. I'm in 220.

Jack: No kidding . . .

Peter: Well, nice meeting you, Bruce. I'm sure

I'll see you soon.

Bruce and Jack: See you later.

Listening for Reductions page 8

1. How are you feeling?

2. See you in an hour.

3. Jack, do you want to eat at the cafeteria?

4. When do you have to meet?

Distinguishing Among -s Endings page 9

1. plays

6. phones

2. misses

7. washes

3. hopes

8. summarizes

4. stops

9. mothers

5. drives

10. puts

Part 2 Presentation: School Orientation

Listening for Main Ideas page 13

Listening for Specific Information page 14

Hello, everybody. Welcome to the American Language Center. I'm Gina Richards, your academic advisor. You can all just call me Gina. I know today is your first day at our school, so you're probably a little nervous and maybe a little shy, too. So, I want to tell you right at the beginning: if you don't understand something, please ask questions. OK? And listen very carefully because we're going to give you a lot or important information—information that will make your experience here enjoyable and usefu OK, here we go.

Let me tell you about the plan for today. There are three things on your schedule. First, you will take a placement test. This test will measure your English level. You'll take a reading, grammar, and composition test. Oh, and also listening. A listening test. The whole placement test takes three hours.

Next, you will meet in small groups, with a teacher, for an orientation. This orientation meeting will be about important things you need to know, like where to buy your books, what types of classes you'll have, how to find a roommate, things like that. This is where you can ask a lot of questions.

Then, finally, this afternoon, you will take a campus tour. We'll show you the main buildings where your classrooms are; you'll see some of the sports facilities, you know, the tennis courts, the swimming pool, places like that; and you'll also visit the library and the computer lab. I think you'll be surprised how large and how beautiful our campus is. All right. Are there any questions before we begin?

Part 3 Strategies for Better Listening and Speaking

Focus on Testing: Using Context Clues page 15

Part 1

Peter: Let's get a medium with extra cheese and pepperoni on it.

Bruce: Can we get mushrooms and tomatoes, too?

Kenji: I don't care. Just get a large one 'cause I'm really hungry.

Question 1: Where are the students?

Peter: This restaurant has got the best pizza on campus!

Part 2

Kenji: Yeah, they told me about this place at the orientation. So, Bruce, how are your classes going?

Bruce: Pretty good. Well, my chemistry class is a little boring. Professor Murphy knows the subject, but he's not a good teacher. Last week

he was sick, and his T.A. was teaching the class. She was much better. This T.A. spends a lot of time answering our questions and correcting our homework.

Question 2: What do you think "T.A." means?

Kenji: Teaching assistants aren't common in Japanese universities. The professors teach all the classes.

Part 3

Peter: Really?

Kenji: Uh huh. I was very surprised when I first came here. You know what else is unusual for me? All the facilities. I mean, the swimming pool, five termis courts, the museum, even a post office! Faber College doesn't look like the college campus where I come from.

Question 3: What does Kenji think about the Faber College campus?

Kenji: It's completely different.

Part 4

Kenji: Speaking of tennis courts, I want to play tomorrow. Can I just go there or do I need to . .

Peter: You need to make a reservation. Just call the tennis center and give them your ID number. You know, your student ID. They'll give you a reservation number. The office is open between 8 A.M. and 5 P.M.

Question 4: How can students make reservations for a tennis court?

Bruce: Here's the phone number for reservations.

Part 5

Peter: Hey, Jack and I already have a court for tomorrow afternoon. Do you want to play doubles with us?

Kenji: Sounds good to me. Can you come Bruce? **Bruce:** Yeah. I have a class 'til 2:00. Let's meet there at 2:30.

Question 5: What are the students going to do tomorrow?

Kenji: You mean, meet at the tennis court, right?

Peter: Uh huh. See you there.

Part 4 Real-World Tasks: Telephone Messages

Listening to Telephone Messages page 18

Example:

Outgoing Message: Hi. You have reached 555-0121. Sorry, but we can't come to the phone right now. If you want to leave a message press one. We'll call you back as soon as we can.

Linda: Kenji, this is Linda from Dr. Brown's office. I'm calling to change your appointment. Unfortunately, Dr. Brown can't see you at two o'clock on Tuesday. But I can give you an appointment for Wednesday at 2:00. I hope that's convenient for you. Please let us know. Call us at 555-0162.

Message 1

Kelly: Kenji, this is Kelly from your math class. Remember me? I'm calling about this week's homework. I'm still sick and will probably stay home until Monday. So, like, uh, can you call me at 555-0149? Any time before 11:00 is OK. Thanks.

Message 2

Bud: Hi, Peter, it's Bud. Listen, want to go to a concert Saturday? It's a Latin jazz band, I think. My cousin has a couple of free tickets. Give me a call today if you're interested- uh, 555-0126. The concert starts at eight-thirty, by the way. Talk to you later.

Message 3

Mrs. Henry: This is Mrs. Henry from the international student office, returning Kenji Suzuki's call. I'm sorry, but we still don't have your papers ready. Please check back next week; just call the main number and, uh, I'm at extension 4745.

Message 4

Don: Uh, yes, uh, this is the research library calling. Peter Riley, we have a biology book with your name and this phone number in it. If it's yours, you can pick it up at the front desk; just show your student identification. Ask for Lisa or Don.

Message 5

Kevin: Hello, Peter? Uh, my name is Kevin Potter. My advisor gave me your number; she said you work with students in math, and I ne help studying for my midterm exam. Can you let me know if you're available and, uh, how much you charge for tutoring? My number is 555-0118. Thanks. Bye.

Message 6

Man: Kenji, this is Honda World Service calling Your car's fixed. Please pick it up by 5:00 toda; As we discussed, the charges came to \$175.

Calling for Information page 20

Bruce: Hi, I'm calling to get a parking permit. I

parking lot nine available?

Admin: Yes, it is. What's your name, please?

Bruce: Bruce Lee. My first name is B-R-U-C-E

Admin: B-R-U-S?

Bruce: No. B as in ball, R as in ring, U as in umbrella, C as in cake and E as in egg. My last name is spelled L-E-E. That's L as in little, E-E

Admin: OK, got it. Address?

Bruce: 3251 Washington Street.

Admin: Day-time phone number?

Bruce: Uh, 555-0103.

Admin: OK. What's the year and make of your

cari

Bruce: 2004 Toyota Camry. **Admin:** License plate?

Bruce: AWJ 130

Admin: One thirty or one thirteen?

Bruce: One, three, oh.

Admin: OK. That'll be \$210 for the semester o:

\$420 for the year.

Bruce: I just need it for the fall semester.

Admin: All right. So, just send in your paymen for \$210, and we'll send you a permit for lot

number nine.

Bruce: Great. Thank you very much.

Admin: You're welcome.

Bruce: Bye.

ৰোক্ত্ৰায় Experiencing Nature

Part 1 Conversation: Vacation Plans

Listening for Main Ideas page 25

Listening for Details page 26

Listening for Stressed Words page 26

Peter: Wow. Look. It's raining cats and dogs—again! I hate this weather. When does winter break start?

Jack: Winter break? It's only October.

Peter: I know, but I'm sick of studying. I want to go someplace warm and lie on the beach for a week. Someplace where it's sunny and dry. Florida or Hawaii, maybe?

Jack: Yeah. Where we can go swimming and snorkeling and get a great tan. Now that's my idea of a perfect vacation.

Bruce: Not mine. I can't swim very well, and I don't like lying in the sun.

Peter: Oh, yeah? How come?

Bruce: I don't know. I just prefer the mountains, especially in winter. I love snowboarding. In fact I'm planning to go to Bear Mountain with some friends in December. Do you want to come?

Jack: No thanks. I went there last year. I was freezing the whole time. Anyway, I don't know how to ski very well. Last year I fell about a hundred times.

Bruce: Peter, how about you?

Peter: Sorry, I'm like Jack. I don't want to go anyplace where it's below 70 degrees.

Jack: By the way, what's the weather forecast for tomorrow?

Bruce: The same as today. Cloudy, cold, and a 90 percent chance of rain.

Jack: Oh, no! I left my umbrella at the library.Bruce: You can borrow mine. I've got an extra one.

Listening for Reductions page 27

Jack: Hi, Bruce. Hi, Peter. Bruce and Peter: Hey, Jack. Bruce: What's happening?

Jack: I'm going to the campus recreation

center. Do you want to come?

Bruce: What are you going to do there?

Jack: Well, it's a nice day. We can swim and lie

in the sun.

Bruce: Thanks, but I don't want to go. I'm too

tired

Jack: How about you, Peter?

Peter: I can't. I've got to stay at home and study.

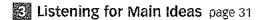
Maybe tomorrow.

Distinguishing Between Can and

Can't page 29

- 1. She can't swim very well.
- 2. Michael can drive.
- 3. The boys can cook.
- 4. I can't find his phone number.
- 5. Kenji can't speak Spanish.
- 6. He can speak Japanese.
- 7. I can't understand him.
- 8. Peter can come with us.
- 9. She can't take photographs in the rain.
- 10. Herb can play tennis very well.

Part 2 Story: Camping



Taking Notes on Specific Information

page 31

Manager: You're all wet and muddy. What happened to you?

Wife: You're not going to believe this! It's the most incredible thing! It all started when we decided to go hiking this morning.

Husband: Yeah, the weather was sunny and clear when we got up. So we put on shorts and

T-shirts and went hiking. Half an hour later it started raining cats and dogs!

Wife: So we hiked back to our tent as fast as we could. We couldn't wait to change into dry clothes.

Husband: Right. But when we went into our tent, we couldn't find our clothes! So we went back outside to look around. And then we saw the craziest thing. Two great big brown bears came out of the woods, and guess what? They were wearing our clothes!

Manager: Aw, come on. That's impossible! What do you mean, the bears were wearing your clothes?

Husband: Well, one bear had my T-shirt around his neck. And the other one had Mary's pants over his head. We still don't know where the rest of our clothes are!

Manager: [laughing]

Wife: I know it sounds funny, but we were so scared! Those bears were big! And now we have a big problem.

Manager: What's that?

Wife and Husband: We don't have any dry clothes to wear!

Part 3 Strategies for Better Listening and Speaking

Focus on Testing: Using Context Clues page 35

Conversation 1

- A: Nice weather we're having.
- **B:** Yes. Isn't it a nice surprise? At this time it's usually much cooler and raining already.
- A: Well, this weather will probably end soon; all the leaves on the trees are brown, and the nights are getting cold.

Conversation 2

- A: Take your coat; it's freezing outside.
- **B:** Nah, I'm only going to the corner store. I'll be back in five minutes.
- A: I'm telling you, it's in the low thirties out there. Do you want to get sick?

Conversation 3

- A: How do you like all this rain?
- B: Well, it's good for the trees and flowers.
- A: Yes, it's nice to see the leaves coming back c the trees again.
- B: Yeah, and I'm glad the snow is all gone.

Conversation 4

- A: Is it hot enough for you?
- **B:** Whew . . . it sure is. I don't mind the heat so much. It's the humidity that bothers me. Look, I'm all wet.
- A: Me too. Let's go get a cold drink somewhere
- B: Yeah, someplace with air conditioning.

Conversation 5

- A: Ah, this is the life. No traffic, no worries. Just lie here and enjoy doing nothing.
- **B:** Honey, your back is turning red. If you're no careful, you're going to get sunburned.
- A: Could you put some sun screen on my back!

Part 4 Real-World Tasks: Weather

Listening for Temperatures page 36

Conversation 1

- A: What's the weather like today?
- B: Hot and humid and about ninety-five degree

Conversation 2

- A: I'm going to take a swim. Want to come?
- **B**: Is the pool heated?
- A: Sure. It's probably over eighty degrees.

Conversation 3

- **A:** How was your skiing holiday?
- **B:** Great! The weather was in the thirties and w had perfect snow conditions.

Conversation 4

- A: Let's go for a walk.
- **B**: What's it like out?
- **A:** About forty degrees, but the wind has stopped.
- B: Thanks, but I think I'll stay inside where it's warm.

Conversation 5

- A: It's a hundred and three in here! Why don't you turn on the air conditioning?
- B: It's broken.

Conversation 6

- **A:** How was the weather in Europe this summer?
- B: Just lovely. Hot, but never over thirty degrees.
- A: Thirty? Oh, you mean Celsius.

Conversation 7

- A: What's wrong?
- **B:** It's thirteen below outside and I can't find my gloves.
- A: Here. Use mine. I have an extra pair.

Conversation 8

- A: Did you check the weather forecast?
- **B:** Yeah. It's supposed to be in the high seventies this weekend.
- **A:** The seventies? I guess we can forget about skiing.

Listening to a Weather Forecast page 37

This is the National Weather Service report at 5:00 in the afternoon, Friday. The forecast for the Bear Mountain area is partly cloudy with some showers through the night, clearing by early morning. The high today was sixty-one degrees; overnight lows will be in the mid-fifties. Tomorrow's highs will be in the sixties with fair skies continuing throughout the day. Temperatures will drop Saturday night to a chilly low of forty-five degrees. Sunday will continue fair, warming up to a high temperature of seventy degrees. Sunday night lows will get down below fifty again. There will be a fifty percent chance of rain on Monday.

<u> Giaptera</u> Living to Eat, or Eating to Live?

Part 1 Conversation: Shopping for Food

- Listening for Main Ideas page 43
- Listening for Details page 43
- Listening for Stressed Words page 44

Andrew: Well, I got a few groceries that aren't on the list.

Nancy: I can see that! We're not shopping for an army, you know.

Andrew: I always do this when I'm hungry.

Nancy: Well, let's see what you have here.

Andrew: Some nice, fresh strawberries for only \$1.79 a pound.

Nancy: Well, that's fine. They always have nice produce here. But why do you have all these cookies?

Andrew: Don't you like them?

Nancy: Oh, I don't know . . . I hope you got a box of tofu.

Andrew: I think I forgot. Where's the aisle with the Asian foods, again?

Nancy: Aisle three.

Andrew: I'll go get it.

Nancy: Wait—this steak you got looks really

expensive!

Andrew: Well, it isn't. It's on sale for just \$3.99 a pound.

Nancy: And what's this? More ice cream? We already have a quart. Why don't you put it back? Meanwhile, I'll get in line right here.

Cashier: I'm sorry, Miss; this is the express line, and it looks like you've got more than ten items. Oh, and we don't take checks here.

Listening for Reductions page 45

Customer: Waiter?

Server: Yes sir. Do you know what you want? **Customer:** Do you have the spaghetti with

mushroom sauce tonight?

Server: Yes, we do.

Customer: Well, are the mushrooms fresh

or canned?

Server: They're fresh, and the sauce has lots

of them.

Customer: Great, I'll have that.

Server: Do you want something to drink? **Customer:** I don't know. Why don't you

recommend something?

Server: How about some nice Italian mineral

water?

Distinguishing between Teens and

Tens page 46

- 1. We waited in line for 30 minutes.
- 2. My sister is 14 years old.
- 3. We've lived in this city for 15 years.
- 4. 60 people came to the party.
- **5.** The groceries cost 70 dollars.
- **6.** There are 18 students in the class.
- **7.** I live 90 miles from my parents.

Listening for Teens and Tens page 47

- This turkey weighs 14 pounds.
- 2. The market is open until 10:30.
- 3. We spent \$40 on groceries yesterday.
- 4. This milk is good until November 13th.
- 5. Those peaches cost \$1.90 a pound.
- Everything in this store is about 15 percent cheaper today.
- 7. I'm having a big party this weekend. I need 30 bottles of mineral water.
- **8.** The store will close in 15 minutes.
- **9.** By using this coupon, you can save 70 cents on this ice cream.
- 10. Canned vegetables are in aisle 19.

Part 2 Advice Show: Healthy Eating

Listening for Main Ideas page 50

Taking Notes on Specific Information page 50

Bob: Hi, everyone, I'm Bob.

Pam: And I'm Pam, and this show is about "Eating Right!"

Bob: You know, Pam, with people so busy today they don't have a lot of time to shop or plan what to eat.

Pam: That's true, but healthy eating might just give you a longer and happier life! So here are some things we all should think about regardir your diet.

Bob: First, eat lots of fruits and vegetables. Why? Well, they're a good source of vitamins, and minerals. . . .

Pam: Right, and they're a good source of fiber, too. Also, they're almost all low in calories and fat, and eating them may help protect you against cancer. So, put an apple or a banana in your lunchbox, or have a carrot for a snack—skip those potato chips.

Bob: That's right. Fruits make a great desert—you don't need all those sugary sweets and drinks, cookies, cakes, candies, sodas.

Pam: You bet you don't. So a second point to remember: too much sugar in your diet can lea to health problems like weight gain, tooth decay—that's trips to your dentist...

Bob: Owww! Or even diabetes, and that's serious!

Pam: Now the third thing we want you to think about is reducing the fat you eat.

Bob: Uh huh. Cutting down on the fat in our diets would be good for many of us.

Pam: So true. It can help us lose weight.

Bob: Or not gain weight in the first place.

Pam: And it can lower our chance of getting heart disease, and cancer, too.

Bob: So cut back on all those cheeseburgers, French fries . . .

Pam: And chips—they're full of fat....

Bob: And salt. Oh, I don't want to forget our

fourth suggestion: Eat more whole grains. You'll get plenty of fiber, vitamins, and minerals from them.

Pam: You mean, like, brown rice and whole wheat?

Bob: That's it. They're much healthier than white bread, white rice, and things like that.

Pam: Finally you don't want to drink too much coffee. Coffee can make you nervous, and keep you awake at night. Or even affect your heartbut we'll talk about coffee on another show. . . .

Strategies for Better Part 3 Listening and Speaking

Focus on Testing: Using Context Clues page 53

Conversation 1

Server: Good evening. My name is Pierre. Would you like a something to drink?

Bob: No, thanks. But we would like to order

some appetizers.

Server: Certainly, here are your menus. Our specials tonight are lemon chicken and fresh broiled swordfish.

Question 1: The speakers are in a . . .

Susan: This is such a beautiful restaurant, Bob. Thanks for bringing me here.

Conversation 2

Felipe: Why don't we sit at the counter? There

aren't any free tables. Salim: Fine.

Waitress: Coffee?

Felipe: Yes.

Salim: Yes, please.

Waitress: I'll be right back to take your order.

Question 2: The speakers are in a . . .

Felipe: This is my favorite diner. The prices are low and the service is great.

Conversation 3

A: These salads look great. Do you want one?

B: No, I want a hot dish from over there.

Server: Yes, what would you like?

A: Is that mushroom soup? Server: No, it's bean soup.

A: How much is it?

Server: It's two dollars a bowl. You pay down

there at the cashier.

Question 3: The speakers are in a . . .

B: I hear this cafeteria is open all night.

Conversation 4

Server: May I take your order?

John: I'll have two burritos, no onions, and two

small Cokes.

Server: For here or to go?

John: For here. Oh, and an order of nachos.

Server: That'll be eight dollars.

Question 4: The speakers are in a . . .

John: I know fast food is fattening, but I really love it.

Real-World Tasks: Part 4 Recipies and Regional Foods

Taking Notes on a Recipe page 56

Tom: To make French toast for four people, here's what you'll need: two eggs, one cup of milk, one-half teaspoon of salt, and about a tablespoon of butter. Have you got all that?

First, beat the eggs, milk, and salt with a fork for a minute until they're well mixed.

Then melt the butter in a frying pan.

While the butter is melting, dip eight slices of bread into the egg mixture.

Then, when the butter is hot, fry the bread slices until they're golden brown.

Serve them on a warm plate with butter and syrup or jam.

Regional Foods page 59

Look at the map of the United States and Canada. As you hear the name of each food, write it on the map in the place where it is popular.

Paula: Vancouver, in Western Canada, has delicious Chinese food because there are many Chinese immigrants in that part of Canada. And Vancouver has great fish—like salmon.

San Francisco also has excellent Chinese and Japanese restaurants. Oh and the bread in San Francisco is really special.

Now, if you drive to Texas, be sure to eat some Mexican food. It's very spicy, but so delicious. In the Midwest, the middle of the United States, you can find terrific cheese in Wisconsin. And don't forget to have a steak in Chicago. The beef is very good there.

If you drive to the Northeast, try to visit Maine to taste the seafood. Lobster is fantastic. And nearby, in Montreal, Canada, the French food is fabulous. Oh, and if you decide to go down south to Georgia, fried chicken is very popular. And in Florida, of course, you'll find the best oranges.

<u> बाह्यसम्बद्ध</u> in the Community

Part 1 Conversation: In the City

- Listening for Main Ideas page 66
- Listening for Details page 66
- Listening for Stressed Words page 66

Kenji: Peter, are you going downtown today?

Peter: Uh-huh. Why?

Kenji: Can you give me a ride? I have to run

some errands.

Peter: Where do you need to go?

Kenji: Uh, a lot of places. First, I have to go to the bank. Could you drop me off at the corner of King Boulevard and Second Avenue?

Peter: King and Second? Oh, sure. I know where that is. But why are you going to the bank? Why don't you use the ATM machine on campus?

Kenji: 'Cause my debit card isn't working; I've got to get a new one. And the cleaner's is next door to the bank. I have to pick up some clothe there anyway.

Peter: Why don't you use the laundry room her in the building?

Kenji: I'm not picking up laundry. It's dry cleaning. By the way, is there a computer repa shop near there? I need to drop off my laptop.

Peter: Computer repair? Oh, yeah. There's a Good Buy across the street from the bank. The fix computers there.

Kenji: Oh, that's convenient. So what are you going to do downtown?

Peter: I'm going to the courthouse. I've got to pay a traffic ticket.

Kenji: No kidding! I have to pay a ticket, too. I just got a ticket last week.

Peter: But, Kenji, you don't drive!

Kenji: I know. I got a ticket for jaywalking!

Peter: Really?!

Kenji: Yeah. I didn't know it's illegal to cross in

the middle of the street!

Listening for Reductions page 68

- A: Do you know where Central Library is?
- B: Sure. You have to take Bus number 9.
- A: Could you walk with me to the bus stop?
- **B:** I'm sorry. I don't have time 'cause I've got to do a lot of things.
- **A:** Oh. Then can you just give me directions to the bus stop?
- **B:** Are you kidding? It's right there across the street.

Part 2 Conversation: Comparing Cities and Towns

Listening for Main Ideas page 73

Taking Notes on Specific Information page 74

Peter: Phew . . . I'm glad I don't live downtown. The traffic is terrible. I have a headache from the noise and all the smog.

Ming: You think our downtown is bad? Ask Kenji about Tokyo.

Kenji: Yeah, Tokyo is noisier and much more crowded.

Ming: Yeah, and I hear the smog's worse, too.

Kenji: That's right.

Peter: So, I guess you don't miss that, huh?

Kenji: Well, I don't miss *those* things. But a big city like Tokyo can be very exciting.

Peter: Yes, I'm sure that's true. But I prefer the peace and quiet of a small town like ours.

Kenji: Yeah, I like it here, too. The people are friendlier and things are cheaper.

Ming: Small towns can be so boring. When I graduate, I want to live in a big city like New York or Chicago. You can make more money there, too.

Peter: Yeah, but it's more dangerous there.

Ming: Yeah, that's a disadvantage. But there are also lots of advantages.

Peter: Like what? The long lines at the bank or in the stores?

Ming: Waiting in line doesn't bother me. I really love shopping in the city. You can find anything.

Kenji: Great! Then next time we need something downtown, we'll send *you*.

Part 3 Strategies for Better Listening and Speaking

Focus on Testing: Using Context Clues page 75

Conversation 1

- A: Next, please.
- B: I'd like to cash this.
- A: Sure. Don't forget to sign the back. Do you have an account here?
- B: Not at this branch.
- A: Then I'll have to see your identification.

Question 1: Where are the speakers?

B: By the way, how late is this bank open?

Conversation 2

- A: Excuse me. Do you stop at Third and Highland?
- **B:** Yes, ma'am . . . Passengers, please move to the rear.
- A: Could you tell me when we get there?
- B: Sure. I'll let you know.

Question 2: Where is the woman?

A: Is the bus always this crowded?

Conversation 3

- A: Can I help you?
- **B:** Yes, I've got four shirts here and two pairs of pants and a jacket. I'm leaving town in a few days, so can I pick them up tomorrow?
- **A:** We can have the pants ready, but the shirts won't be back until Wednesday morning.
- B: Well, OK. Oh, and don't forget to take out this coffee stain.

Question 3: Where are the speakers?

A: No problem. We're the best dry cleaners in town.

Conversation 4

- A: Fill out this application and wait in that line for your eye test.
- **B**: About how long will this take?

A: Well, you'll have to take a fifteen-minute road test, and the written test also takes fifteen minutes. But you may have to wait in line a long time for your picture.

Question 4: What is the young man doing?

B: Will you send me my driver's license, or do I have to pick it up in person?

Conversation 5

- A: Will this get to New York in two days?
- **B:** Only if you send it express mail.
- A: OK. I'd like to do that.
- B: All right. Anything else?
- A: Yes. A book of stamps, please.
- **B:** Fine, that's, uh, sixteen dollars and sixty cents, please.

Question 5: Where are the speakers?

A: Is this post office open on Saturdays?

Part 4 Real-World Tasks: Directions

Following Directions page 79

Peter: Excuse me. Is there a bank near here?

Man: There's one four or five blocks from here.

Walk north on Newbury Boulevard to First

Street; turn right on First. At the second block,
turn left and look for the bank on the right side
of Walnut Street just before Cherry Lane.

You are at location C. Continue to the next place from here.

Peter: Excuse me, ma'am. I'm trying to find a big department store nearby.

Woman: Oh, there's one on the corner of Newbury and Cherry. Just walk down Cherry two blocks and turn left. Then you'll see it on the left.

You are at location A. Continue to the next place from here.

Peter: Could you tell me where King's Books is? I hear it's a great bookstore.

Man: King's Books? Oh, yes. They've got great stuff. Do you know how to get to Washington Boulevard?

Peter: I think so. I go out on First Street and turn right.

Man: Nope. Turn left. Washington's the first street. Turn right on Washington and follow it a couple of blocks to Columbus Street. Turn left and cross Walnut Street. On the left side you'll so a barbershop and then a market. Walk between them, and you'll find the bookstore in back.

You are at location F. Continue to the next place from here.

Peter: Can you recommend a Chinese restaurant near here?

Woman: Sure. Chow's has good Chinese food.

Peter: How do I get there?

Woman: Go out to Walnut Street and go up to Second Street. Walk west, cross Washington Boulevard, and the restaurant is across from Mort's Gym.

Peter: So it's on the south side of the street? **Woman:** That's right.

You are at location E. Continue to the next place from here.

Peter: Is there a concert at Lowe Auditorium tonight?

Man: I think so.

Peter: How do I get there?Man: Are you driving?Peter: No, I'm walking.

Man: Turn right and walk all the way to McMillan Road. Then make a left and go straight a block or two. The auditorium is on the corner of Cherry Lane and McMillan.

You have arrived at location H. Stop and relax.

Listening for Directions on the Phone

page 80

Conversation 1

- A: Metro Bus Company.
- **B:** Hello. I need to go to the airport from Main Street.
- A: Main Street and what?
- B: Main and Grant.
- **A:** OK. What time do you have to be at the airport?
- B: At six o'clock.
- A: Take bus thirty-three at four-fifty at the

- corner of Main and Grant. Get off at Airport Boulevard. That's two blocks from the airport.
- **B:** So it's bus number thirty-three at four-fifty; and I get off at . . .
- A: Airport Boulevard.
- B: Thank you very much.

Conversation 2

- A: Bus information. Tom speaking.
- **B:** I want to go to Salem. Is there a bus at around nine in the morning?
- **A:** Just a minute . . . There's one at eight-fifty, leaving from the Hilton Hotel.
- B: I see. What's the fare?
- A: It's \$7 one way.
- **B:** How long does it take?
- A: About forty minutes.
- B: Thanks.

Conversation 3

- A: Metro Bus Company. May I help you?
- B: How can I get to 1800 Orange Street?
- A: From where?
- **B:** From Hollywood Boulevard. Hollywood and Temple.
- A: Get on bus number 102 at the corner of Hollywood and Temple. Get off at Madison Avenue and Orange, then walk two blocks north on Orange.
- B: How often does the bus run?
- A: Ah, let's see. Bus 102 runs, uh, every six minutes.
- **B:** Every six minutes? That's great. Thanks.

Chapter 5 Home

Part 1 Conversation: Finding the Right Apartment

- Listening for Main Ideas page 85
- Listening for Details page 86

5 Listening for Stressed Words page 86

Beth: I'm so stressed out. My landlord just raised my rent. I think I'll have to move.

Ming: Really? You know, my building has some vacancies. It's a pretty nice place, and it's just ten minutes from campus.

Beth: Oh yeah? How much is the rent for a studio?

Ming: There are no studio apartments in our building. My neighbor just moved out of a one-bedroom. He paid \$850 a month, I think.

Beth: That's not bad. Tell me more.

Ming: Well, one-bedrooms come with a bathroom, a kitchen, a fireplace in the living room, pretty big closets, and uh... Are you looking for a furnished or unfurnished place?

Beth: Unfurnished. I have all my own stuff. What about parking and laundry?

Ming: There's no garage. You have to park on the street. But there is a laundry room downstairs.

Beth: Hmm. I think I'm interested. Could you give me the address?

Ming: Sure. It's 1213 Rose Avenue. The manager's name is Mr. Azizi. Call him up or just stop by and talk to him.

Beth: Thanks, Ming. I'm going to do that tomorrow for sure.

Listening for Reductions page 87

- A: Mr. Azizi, I have to talk to you. I have another problem.
- **B**: Could you call me later? I'm busy now.
- A: No, I need the plumber again. Could you call him right now?
- **B:** I have a lot of things to do. I'll call him tomorrow morning, OK?
- A: No, I need him right now!
- **B:** Are you having trouble with the toilet again?
- A: Yes. Look, just give me the plumber's phone number. I'll call him.
- **B:** All right, all right. Just give me a minute and I'll do it.

Distinguishing Among -ed Endings page 88

1. turned

6. walked

2. rented

7. tested

3. mixed

8. followed

4. asked

9. moved

5. recommended

10. changed

Part 2 Conversation: Touring an Apartment

Listening for Main Ideas page 92

Taking Notes on Specific Information page 92

Mr. Azizi: So, here's the living room. Oh, and please don't touch the walls; we just painted them. I hope you like green.

Beth: Well, green is not my favorite color . . .

Mr. Azizi: As you can see, there's lots of light in here. And here's the fireplace. It's great in the winter.

Beth: Whew, it's warm in here, isn't it? Is there any air conditioning?

Mr. Azizi: No, there isn't. Just keep this window open. Oh, it's almost never this noisy.

Beth: I'm sorry, what did you say?

Mr. Azizi: Come this way. Here's your kitchen, an electric stove, a dishwasher... This big refrigerator is included, and there's room for a breakfast table here...

Beth: That's nice. Could I see the bedroom?Mr. Azizi: Sure, it's over here. We just put in new carpeting, so . . . uh . . . we raised the

rent \$25.

Beth: Oh, really? Hmm . . . the bedroom looks a little small.

Mr. Azizi: But look at all the closet space! And here's the bathroom, with a shower and bathtub.

Beth: Oh, what about that leak?

Mr. Azizi: Hmm. I can't believe it. The plumber just fixed it last week. **Beth:** Uh, if I decide to take this apartment, when can I move in?

Mr. Azizi: It's available on the first of the month. So that's actually the day after tomorrow.

Beth: I see. And, uh, do I have to sign . . . I mean, is there a lease?

Mr. Azizi: It's up to you. You can sign a one-year lease or you can pay month-to-month. So uh, are you interested?

Beth: Possibly. I need to think about it a little more. And I have a few more questions.

Mr. Azizi: No problem. Let's go to my office and talk.

Part 3 Strategies for Better Listening and Speaking

Focus on Testing: Using Context Clues page 94

Conversation 1

Sam: Alex, can I talk to you about something?

Alex: Sure, what's up?

Sam: You know, last night I couldn't study because of all the noise. And then I couldn't sleep either. You kept me up 'til 3:00 A.M.

Question 1: What did Alex probably do last night?

Alex: Sorry man.

Conversation 2

Amy: I hate my roommate. Look at this! All the dishes are still on the table from last night! And her clothes! She never puts them in her closet. They're on the floor, on the chair, everywhere.

Susanna: Amy, why don't you talk to her about it?

Amy: I already talked to her about ten times. She won't change.

Question 2: Why does Amy hate her roominate

Susanna: You know, you should find another roommate who isn't messy and who cleans up after herself.

Conversation 3

Tara: Do you mind if I watch the news?

Kim: Yes, actually I do. My favorite comedy is

coming on right now.

Tara: Is that more important than the news? *Kim:* Don't start that again. We had the same

argument last night. Just turn to channel 4, OK?

Question 3: Which sentence is probably true?

Tara: I think our house needs another television set.

Conversation 4

Joe: Sasha, we need to pay our bills today. The telephone bill is \$360 and the gas is \$40.

Sasha: OK, so I'll give you \$200. We're sharing everything half and half, right?

Joe: Yes, but it's not fair. *You* made most of the phone calls. And I almost never cook. So I don't want to pay half of these bills.

Sasha: But Joe, we agreed to pay everything 50–50!

Question 4: What does Joe think?

Joe: I don't think \$200 is enough. This month you need to pay more than half.

Conversation 5

Carol: Alice, you know, your friends have stayed with us for over a month.

Alice: I know, but they haven't been able to find their own place to live, yet.

Carol: I understand, but we just have one bathroom, a tiny kitchen, and not much privacy.

Alice: But they're so nice—you really think there's a problem?

Carol: Yeah—we can't even relax, or watch TV, when they go to sleep on the living room floor!

Question 5: What is probably true about their apartment?

Alice: I know it's uncomfortable here for four people, but they'll leave soon, I promise.

Part 4 Real-World Tasks: Caring for Someone's House

Preparing to Leave Home for Vacation page 96

Uncle: So Beth, you're sure you have time to do some things for us while we're away?

Beth: No problem. Just let me know what you need done.

Uncle: OK. First, can you get our mail from the mailbox, and any newspapers in the yard—and just put them inside the front door in a bag.

Beth: Fine. How often do you want that done? **Uncle:** Every day, actually. But you'll need to feed and walk the dog twice a day, so you'll be over there anyway.

Beth: I see. What do I feed the dog, and how far should I walk him?

Uncle: A cup of dry dog food around 8:00 in the morning, and another around 5:00 should be fine. I'll leave a big bag of dog food in the kitchen. Walk him around the block when he's done eating. Oh, and keep his water bowl filled up, if you could.

Beth: Sure. Anything else?

Uncle: Well the garbage collector comes

Tuesday, and I'm going to leave the garbage can
down by the street today, but Tuesday night,
can you put it back in the back yard for us?

Beth: I suppose so. . . .

Uncle: Oh, and can you water the rose bushes

in the front yard?

Beth: How often should I do that?

Uncle: Two or three times a week if it doesn't

rain . . .

Beth: So is that all?

Uncle: Just one more thing—you're welcome to enjoy the swimming pool, the house—you know we just got a giant new plasma TV—just clean up, OK?

Beth: How about the keys to your BMW? **Uncle:** Sorry but the car's not included....

Listening to Moving Instructions

page 98

Mover: Where do you want the couch, Miss? **Beth:** How about . . . here, where I'm standing.

Mover: What about the TV?

Beth: Just put it to the right side of the

fireplace.

Mover: And the bookcase? You want it in the

living room, too?

Beth: No—in the bedroom, please. **Mover:** What about these towels?

Beth: By the bathroom door would be great. **Mover:** Where should I put these boxes?

They're really heavy.

Beth: Careful! Those are my dishes. Just leave them on the kitchen counter. Where are the

boxes with my books?

Mover: They're next to the bed. Is that OK? **Beth:** Sure. Everything is a mess anyway.

<u> Giantaika</u> Cultures of the World

Part 1 Conversation: Learning New Customs

- Listening for Main Ideas page 103
- Listening for Details page 104
- Listening for Stressed Words page 104

Kenji: So, Salma, is this your first trip to the United States?

Salma: Yes, it is.

Kenji: And what's your impression so far?

Salma: Well, the people are really friendly, and the city is beautiful. But the food; well, it's not so good.

Kenji: Oh, yeah, that's what I thought too when I first got here. But I'm used to American food

now. I actually love hotdogs and French fries.

Yolanda: So last night I took Salma to a Mexican restaurant. I wanted her to try something exotic.

Kenji: Did you like it?

Salma: Yeah, the food was pretty good, but it

was too much. I couldn't finish it all.

Yolanda: Salma was amazed when I took the leftovers home in a doggie bag.

Kenji: Yeah, that's funny, isn't it? They call it a doggie bag but it's for people. Anyway, what else surprised you?

Salma: That the restaurant was so cold! We don't use air conditioning so much in my country. Oh, and the water had ice in it, too. I had to put on my sweater, I was so cold!

Salma: Excuse me. Hello? [short pause] Oh, h Eduardo.

Waitress: Excuse me Miss, but we don't allow cell phones in the restaurant.

Salma: Oh, sorry. I didn't know . . . Eduardo, I'l have to call you back . . . That's strange for me. In Lebanon we use phones *everywhere*. I mear we try to talk quietly in a place like this, but . .

Kenji: Same in Japan. This kind of rule is getting more popular, though.

Yolanda: I'm sorry, Salma.

Salma: No, no, it's OK. When in Rome, do as the Romans do.

Listening for Reductions page 105

Anita: Well, it's time to get back to the office. I see you soon, Brenda.

Brenda: OK, see you . . . Wait, Anita, is this your cell phone?

Anita: Oh my goodness, yes, thanks. By the way, I almost forgot: my parents are coming fo a visit next week.

Brenda: Really? I'd love to meet them.

Anita: Well, do you want to have lunch with us on Saturday?

Brenda: Saturday? Hmm...I promised my roommate I would go shopping with her that day. Could we get together for coffee later in the afternoon?

Anita: I don't know. They might be busy. I'll as them and let you know.

Part 2 Lecture: Coming-of-Age Ceremonies

Listening for Main Ideas page 108

Taking Notes on Specific Information page 109

At what age does a child become an adult? The answer depends on your culture. Here are a few examples.

First, in some North American Indian cultures, a boy becomes a man around the age of 13. At that time, he goes into the woods alone, without food or water, for several days. When he returns safely, he becomes an adult man. Girls become adult women as soon as they are old enough to have babies, also around the age of 12 or 13.

In Japan today, young people become legal adults at age 20. Each year on the second Monday in January, they celebrate "Coming-of-Age Day," when all the twenty-year-olds in a town are invited to attend a special ceremony. They wear traditional clothes, listen to speeches, and visit with old friends.

Finally, in the United States, the passage into adulthood takes several years. American teenagers look forward to their 16th birthday, because in most states that is the age when they can get a driver's license. The *legal* age of adulthood is 18, when Americans can vote, get married, and work full-time.

Part 3 Strategies for Better Listening and Speaking

Focus on Testing: Using Context Clues page 112

Conversation 1

Yuka: Hi, Belinda.

Belinda: Hi, Yuka. What are you doing here? **Yuka:** Oh, I was in your neighborhood. I just

wanted to say hi.

Belinda: Uh, that's nice. Uh . . .

Yuka: Are you busy?

Belinda: Uh, yes, a little bit. But come in for a

few minutes, anyway.

Question 1: What mistake did Yuka make?

Yuka: I'm sorry I didn't call before I came. I'll only stay a few minutes.

Conversation 2

Customer: Excuse me, waiter!

Waiter: Yes, are you ready to pay, sir?

Customer: Yes, here you are.

Waiter: Thank you. Uh . . . Excuse me, sir. Was

there a problem with your food?

Customer: No. It was delicious, thank you. Waiter: Uh, was the service OK? I mean, did I

do anything. . . ?

Customer: No, you were great. Excellent

service.

Waiter: Oh, OK. I just, uh, wasn't sure . . .

Question 2: What mistake did the customer probably make?

Customer: Oh, I almost forgot. Here's your tip.

Conversation 3

Man: Wow, this is a great house!

Woman: Thanks.

Man: When did you move in?

Woman: We bought it two months ago. We

finally moved in last week.

Man: How much did you pay for it?

Woman: Uh, well, it was a good, I mean, uh, a pretty good price, uh . . . Would you like a drink

or something?

Man: Yeah, a glass of water would be great, thanks.

Question 4: What mistake did the man make?

Man: It was rude of me to ask how much you paid. I'm sorry.

Conversation 4

Woman: I don't understand my new neighbors from Korea.

Man: What do you mean?

Woman: Well, yesterday was my neighbour Hyun-Ee's birthday. So I told her happy birthday and gave her a lovely gold pen, which was quite expensive.

Man: Uh-oh. What did she do?

Woman: She looked uncomfortable and kind of pushed me away. Don't you think that's rude?Man: No. She probably thought you were rude.

Question 5: What didn't the American woman know?

Man: In Korea, it's not customary to accept expensive presents from people you don't know very well.

Part 4 Real-World Tasks: Dining Customs

Following Directions for Setting a Table page 116

Mrs. Riley: OK, so we start by putting the napkin in the center of the dinner plate, like this . . .

Ming: All right. Now what?

Mrs. Riley: First you need to set the water glass. It goes above the plate and a little to the right.

Ming: Like this?

Mrs. Riley: Exactly. Now, this little plate here is for bread. You put it above the dinner plate to the left. And this is a special knife for butter. Lay it across the top of the bread plate.

Ming: All right. What's next? *Mrs. Riley:* Silverware.

Ming: Sorry?

Mrs. Riley: Silverware. Knives, forks, and

spoons. There are different ones for each course. Are you serving a salad?

Ming: Yes.

Mrs. Riley: And soup?

Ming: Yes.

Mrs. Riley: OK. Take this dinner knife and puit to the right of the dinner plate. Then put the soup spoon to the right of the knife. Good. Noto the left of the plate, first put this big fork. That's the dinner fork. And put this smaller for to the left of that. It's for salad. OK. Now, what are you serving for dessert?

Ming: Chocolate cake.

Mrs. Riley: Then you need a dessert fork. Put above the dinner plate, with the handle pointing to the left. And then put this small spoon, for coffee, above it, with the handle pointing to the right.

Ming: All these knives and forks! How do peop know which ones to use?

Mrs. Riley: Actually it's quite simple. You always use the utensil that's on the outside, an you serve the food in the same order. So, for example, you'll serve your soup first, your sala second, your main course third, and the desse last. See?

Ming: Yes. It's really quite logical. Thanks, Mrs. Riley. You've been a great help!

Mrs. Riley: You're welcome.

Ming: Now I just have to make sure not to burn the food!

digreat/ Health

Part 1 Conversation: Touring a Health Club

Listening for Main Ideas page 124

Listening for Details page 124

Listening for Stressed Words page 124

Adel: Hi, I'm Adel. I'm sure you're going to like it here. Let me show you around . . . Here's the weight room. We've got the newest machines, our instructors can show you how to use them.

Peter: This is cool!

Kenji: Yeah. I really need to start lifting weights.

Adel: And here is a cardio class . . .

Peter: I've never tried cardio. It's just dancing,

isn't it?

Adel: Not really. Actually, they're working harder than you think.

Kenji: And cardio is very good for your heart.

Adel: It sure is. But you should do it at least three times a week if you want to be in good shape.

Peter: Well, I already jog three times a week.

Adel: That's terrific.

Kenji: You also have boxing classes here, don't

you?

Adel: Yes. I'll give you a schedule of classes when we finish our tour. Now here's our swimming pool.

Adel: C'mon, I'll show you the showers and the locker room.

Adel: You know, if you want to join our gym, you ought to do it before the end of the month.

Kenji: Really? Why?

Adel: Well, because we have a special discount for students this month. Let's go to my office and I'll tell you all about it.

Understanding Tag Questions page 127

- 1. You play football, don't you?
- 2. You didn't hurt yourself, did you?

- 3. It's a beautiful day, isn't it?
- 4. You don't eat junk food, do you?
- 5. This exercise is hard, isn't it?
- **6.** The pool is warm, isn't it?
- 7. My father looks healthy, doesn't he?
- 8. Your parents enjoy camping, don't they?
- **9.** We need special shoes for cardio, don't we?
- 10. She can swim fast, can't she?

Part 2 A Doctor's Advice: Treating an Illness

Listening for Main Ideas page 132

Taking Notes on Specific Information page 132

Doctor: Barbara, you're back again! What seems

to be the trouble?

Barbara: Well, I woke up this morning with a terrible headache.

Doctor: Yes?

Barbara: And I had an upset stomach too. I'm feeling really weak, and my whole body feels hot, and my muscles hurt. Oh, and I'm starting to get a sore throat.

Doctor: Well, your forehead feels really warm. You probably have a fever. Let me see your throat.

Barbara: Ahhhh.

Doctor: Ah-hah. It's all red and swollen. I think you've got another case of the flu. You were sick just last month, weren't you?

Barbara: Yeah, I was.

Doctor: Are you taking good care of yourself?

Barbara: What do you mean?

Doctor: Well, do you eat right, and do you get

enough sleep?

Barbara: Well, right now I'm studying for some tests and I'm very tired. I've been drinking a lot of coffee and eating pizza.

Doctor: You should stop drinking coffee and eat lots of fruits and vegetables. I want you to take two aspirin four times a day, drink a lot of juice, and get plenty of rest. If your throat doesn't get

better in a week, I want you to call me, OK? **Barbara:** So I don't need a prescription, do I? **Doctor:** Not yet. Well, try to take care of yourself, and don't work too hard.

Part 3 Strategies for Better Listening and Speaking

Focus on Testing: Using Context Clues page 135

Part 1

Conversation 1

Man: Hello, may I take your order?

Woman: Yes, I'd like a salad with low-fat cottage cheese, no dressing, please. And one slice of bread, no butter.

Man: Anything to drink?

Woman: Do you have unsweetened iced tea?

Man: Yes, we do. Will that be all, Miss?

Woman: Yes . . . oh, wait! For dessert I'll have a

piece of chocolate cake with ice cream.

Question 1: What's surprising about the woman's order?

Man: You know, before you ordered that cake, I thought you were on a diet.

Conversation 2

Woman: So, that was a good workout, wasn't it?
Man: Yeah. Let's see . . . what did we do? We ran three miles, we played two sets of tennis, and we did 50 sit-ups.

Woman: Yeah. I want to get a nice cold bottle of water from the vending machine.

Man: And I want to get a bag of potato chips.

Question 2: What's surprising about what the man says?

Woman: You know, you take such good care of yourself and get so much exercise. I really don't understand why you eat junk like potato chips.

Conversation 3

Son: Why did you wake me up, Dad? **Father:** You were sleeping quite a while. I think

Father: You were sleeping quite a while. I thin! you should cover up and get into the shade. **Son:** You think so? I really want to get a good tan.

Father: Well, you already look a bit red to me. **Son:** Don't worry. I do this every summer at the

Narrator: Question 3: What is surprising about what the son says?

Father: You shouldn't lie in the sun so long witl out protection. You're going to get a terrible sunburn.

Conversation 4

Man: Hi, Andrea. How're you doing?

Woman: I am so stressed out! I can't eat, I can'

sleep. I feel like I'm going crazy!

Man: Why? What's the problem?

Woman: I've got so many things to do. You know, school, my job, housework, sports—there just isn't enough time for everything.

Man: You really ought to take a vacation. Mayb go to Hawaii for a week.

Woman: Oh, I don't want to do that.

Man: Why not?

Woman: It's so boring there. There's nothing

to do.

Question 4: What's surprising about what Andrea said?

Man: I don't get it. You're complaining about how stressed out you are, but you don't even want some time to relax!

Part 2

Conversation 1

- A: So Nancy went into the hospital last night?
- **B:** That's right, and her husband is waiting for the news right now.
- A: Is this her first?
- **B:** Yes, so they're both very nervous. Especially Steve.
- A: When can Nancy come home?
- **B:** If all goes well, they'll both be home in a couple of days. It's exciting, isn't it?

Question 1: The situation is . . .

A: Yes, having your first baby is always very special.

Conversation 2

- A: These carrots are organic.
- **B:** What about your eggs? Are they fresh?
- A: Of course. All our eggs come from local farms daily.
- **B**: You sell vitamins, don't you?
- A: Yes, they're right next to the nuts over there.
- B: Your stuff looks great, but it's a little expensive.
- A: Well, we sell only the best.

Question 2: The speakers are in a . . .

B: Well, I guess this is the best health food store in town.

Part 4 Real-World Tasks: Talking to Health Care Professionals

Taking Notes on Phone Conversations
page 138

Conversation 1

- A: University Dental Clinic. May I help you?
- **B**: Yes, I'd like to make an appointment.
- A: Do you have a problem, or is it just for a checkup?
- **B**: I think I've broken a tooth.
- **A:** Well, can you come in tomorrow morning?
- B: No, but how about after lunch?
- A: Well, let me see . . . Dr. Jones can probably take you at around . . . 2:00. How's that?
- B: That's great. Where is your office?
- A: We're at 532 Western Avenue. That's near Third Street.
- **B:** OK. I'll see you tomorrow at 2:00.

Conversation 2

- A: Drugs R Us. May I help you?
- **B:** Yes, I'd like to know if my prescription is ready.
- A: What's the name, please?
- B: Ellen Beattie.
- A: Spell that, please.

- **B**: B-E-A-T-T-I-E.
- A: Oh, yes, here it is. It comes to \$14.95.
- **B:** Are there any special instructions?
- **A:** Well, let me see. Take the pills every six hours with food. But don't worry. The instructions are also on the bottle.
- **B**: OK. How late can I pick it up?
- **A:** Today we're open until five o'clock.
- B: All right. Thanks a lot. I'll be in later.

Conversation 3

- A: Family Medicine.
- B: Hi, Sherry. This is Penny Berkowitz.
- A: Hi. You're bringing your baby in this afternoon, aren't you?
- B: Well, our car broke down. So I'd like to change our appointment with Dr. Stork, if that's OK.
- A: Sure. What's a good time for you?
- **B**: Can I come in on Monday?
- A: How about ten o'clock?
- B: Fine.
- A: OK. We'll see you then.
- B: Oh, while we're on the phone, my husband needs a checkup. Can you take him one evening next week?
- A: I think so. What about Tuesday at six o'clock with Dr. Miller?
- B: That's perfect. Thanks. Bye-bye.

<u> विकास हैं Entertainment</u> and the Media

Part 1 Conversation: Watching TV

Listening for Main Ideas page 145

Listening for Details page 146

Listening for Stressed Words page 146

Bruce: Hey, listen to this. The average American watches four hours of TV a day.

Jack: A day? You're joking.

Bruce: No, it says so right here in this newspaper. Hmm, I guess *you're* an average American, Jack. You always have your TV on.

Jack: Come on. Are you saying I'm a couch

potato?

Bruce: Yeah. I really think watching TV is a waste of time.

Jack: Oh, come on. Some programs are bad, like those soap operas. But what about sports or the news? You watch those sometimes, don't you?

Bruce: Well, actually, for the news, I prefer the newspaper. Or the Internet.

Jack: Why?

Bruce: First, because they give you a lot more information. And I can read them any time I want. Plus, I hate all the commercials.

Jack: I know what you mean. That's why, when the commercials come on, I just turn down the volume or change channels.

Bruce: Yeah, I noticed that. Channel surfing drives me crazy.

Jack: OK, next time you come over, I'll let you have the remote control.

Bruce: Oh, that's so sweet. But I have a better idea. Next time I come over, let's just turn the TV off.

Listening for Reductions page 147

- A: Are you calling the movie theater?
- **B:** Uh-huh. Don't you want to go to the movies tonight?
- A: To tell you the truth, I'm pretty tired. But we can go to an early show. Do you know what you want to see?
- **B:** Not really. I'll let you choose. Batman III is playing at eight and James Bond is at ten.
- A: Let's see Batman. I'm tired now and by ten o'clock I'm going to be dead.

Part 2 News Report: An Airplane Crash

Listening for Main Ideas page 152

Listening for Specific Information page 152

Radio Announcer: Good evening. Our top story tonight: about an hour ago, a small airplane carrying six people landed safely in traffic on Highway 1. Two of the passengers received back injuries, and one of the passengers suffered a broken leg. Here's reporter Laura Jones at the scene of the crash.

Reporter: Good evening, Mark. I'm standing here on Highway 1 with two drivers who almoshit the plane as it landed. Could you tell me what you thought as you watched the plane coming down?

Witness 1: Well, at first I wasn't scared. But then I saw it was flying very low. So I drove to the side of the road in a hurry.

Reporter: And you, sir?

Witness 2: I almost didn't see the plane at all. I happened so fast. When I finally heard the plane's engine, I knew something was wrong. And then I hit my brakes. Phew . . . it was really close. I'm still shaking.

Reporter: Fortunately, no one on the ground was hurt, but the plane blocked traffic for over an hour. Officer John McNamara of the local highway police thinks the plane ran out of gasoline. A complete investigation will begin tomorrow. Back to you, Mark.

Part 3 Strategies for Better Listening and Speaking

Focus on Testing: Using Context Clues page 154

Commercial 1

Announcer: Looking for a healthy start and a delicious flavor? Time to go to work, but no time to cook a healthy breakfast? Start your morning right with a bowl of *Flakos!*

Question 1: What are *Flakos?*

Announcer: They're my favorite cereal, and they provide all the energy I need for the morning.

Commercial 2

A: Hello?

B: Hi, Marge. Are you asleep?

A: Not anymore. Who is this?

B: It's Bill. I'm on vacation in California.

A: Bill, it's 12:00 midnight.

B: Yeah, but I have some good news! I'm calling for free! I get 5000 free night-time minutes on this new calling plan. And I got a great new camera phone!

Question 2: This is an ad for a . . .

Announcer: SureCell—the cell phone company that saves you money all day—and all night!

Commercial 3

Hi! This is Tex Lewis. I'll do anything to sell you one of these fine beauties. Lookie here. We've got a 2005 two-door sedan here, automatic, with low mileage. This baby is clean; got new tires, GPS system, side airbags, the whole works. Take a test drive today. And it can be yours for just \$16,000, or \$500 per month. Come in and check it out. See you soon.

Question 3: This is an ad for . . .

Announcer: Tex's Used Cars. Quality cars for less.

Commercial 4

A: Honey, make me a sandwich.

B: Henry! It's midnight. I'm tired.

A: Honey, what's on TV?

B: I don't know. It's two o'clock in the morning.

A: Honey, can I have some breakfast?

B: Henry, it's four o'clock in the morning. Why don't you take some Dreameasc?

Question 4: Dreamease is a . . .

Announcer: Dreamease, the sleeping pill that helps you get the rest you need.

Part 4 Real-World Tasks: Television

Discussing a Program Guide page 156

Jennifer: What's on TV tonight?

Raul: Let me check the TV guide. What time is

it now?

Jennifer: It's almost seven-thirty.

Raul: There are probably some game shows on.

Jennifer: Yeah, I think Who Wants To Be a Millionaire? is on Channel 7 at seven o'clock.

Raul: Who Wants to Be a Millionaire? I'm a little tired of that one.

Jennifer: OK. See if there are any good movies on.

Raul: Well, there are three movies on at eight o'clock.

Jennifer: Which ones are they?

Raul: There's *Shanghai Knights* on Channel 13—you know, the contedy with Jackie Chan.

Jennifer: I've already seen it.

Raul: Then on Channel 11 there's the *Matrix*. But you don't like science fiction, right?

Jennifer: Ugh. I hate sci-fi.

Raul: And then there's the horror movie *Scream* ... that's on Channel 20.

Jennifer: Oh, wait—what's tonight? Wednesday? My favorite sitcom is on at eight o'clock!

Raul: At 8:00? You must be kidding—you don't want to watch *Friends* again! Channel 53 should take it off, it's so old.

Jennifer: I don't care. *Friends* is still the funniest.

Jennifer: Come on, let's make a decision.

Raul: OK. We can watch your sitcom at 8:00 if you let me watch basketball at 9:00 on channel 25.

Jennifer: Basketball? But you played basketball all afternoon!

Raul: But it's the NBA finals!

Jennifer: Fine. But I want to catch the news at 8:30. I want to know about the President's trip to Asia.

Raul: Yeah, me too. I'm sure CNN on Channel 24 will have a good report.

Jennifer: Yeah. I guess we're all set. I'll go make some popcorn.

Giaptaro Social Life

Part 1 Conversation: Meeting Old Friends

- Listening for Main Ideas page 164
- 4 Listening for Details page 164
- Listening for Stressed Words page 164

Yolanda: Ming, look! I can't believe it! It's Dan. Hey! How are you?

Dan: Yolanda? Ming? Wow! I haven't seen you since graduation night!

Ming: I know. You look great!

Dan: Thanks. So do you!

Ming: So what have you been up to?

Dan: Well, I go to Faber College.

Yolanda: Really? Do you like it?

Dan: Yeah, so far. But I've been studying really hard

Ming: Sure you have . . .

Yolanda: So, what's your major?

Dan: It's computer science.

Ming: Ah-h-h. That makes sense. You always

were good at math and science.

Dan: Thanks. Anyway, what have you been up to?

Ming: Well, I'm a sales rep for a publishing company.

Dan: No kidding! How do you like that?

Ming: Oh, I love it! I'm on the road a lot, but I get to meet some interesting people.

Dan: That's terrific. And how about you, Yolanda?

Yolanda: I'm studying pre-med at State Gollege.

Dan: Wow—you can be my doctor! You always were good at science too. Well, it was great seeing you both. Let's keep in touch from now on. E-mail me sometime. Here's my address.

Matching Statements and Responses page 167

- 1. My sister just had triplets.
- 2. Guess what? I'm getting married next month.
- 3. Would you like a job for a dollar an hour?
- 4. Someone hit my car yesterday. It's going to cost \$1,000 to repair.
- **5.** I met the President of the United States vesterday.
- My sister likes to eat peanut butter and banana sandwiches.
- 7. I locked the keys in the car.

Part 2 Conversation: Arranging a Match

Listening for Main Ideas page 168

Taking Notes on Specific Information page 169

Tanya: Listen, Meena, a friend is coming to town next week. Would you like to meet him?

Meena: No thanks, Tanya.

Tanya: Hmm, I see. How are you going to meet a husband?

Meena: Oh, my family's always looking for the right kind of person. Or they might even take me to a professional matchmaker.

Tanya: Interesting . . . So what makes a good match?

Meena: Well, he's got to be from a good family from my parents' point of view. And he has to share our beliefs.

Tanya: That's just what my mother says. And...?

Meena: He should be honest and hardworking, be a strong leader, but be kind.

Tanua: Sounds good to me.

Meena: You know, my parents would never force me to marry someone I really couldn't accept . . . But we believe love is something that takes time—it can grow in the right situation.

Tanya: I think I understand....

Meena: Maybe it doesn't sound very romantic. But our family life is really strong, and all my relatives seem pretty satisfied with their marriages.

Tanya: I wish I could say the same . . .

Part 3 Strategies for Better Listening and Speaking

Focus on Testing: Using Context Clues page 174

Conversation 1

Man: So how long have you lived here?

Woman: I've lived here all my life. I really love

it here.

Man: It seems nice, but I've been so busy with my new job and moving in to my new apartment that I haven't done any sightseeing yet. Are you free on Saturday afternoon? Maybe you could show me around a little.

Question 1: Which of these sentences is true?

Woman: Sure. Tell me, how long have you been

in town?

Man: Only about three weeks.

Conversation 2

Woman: So, are you glad you left?

Man: Very glad. My salary wasn't great, as you know, and the manager was a pain in the neck.

Woman: He still is. Every day I hate going to work. But I don't know if I could find a better job.

Man: Why don't you start looking around? You might get lucky like me.

Question 2: Which of these sentences is true?

Man: I really enjoyed working with you, of course. I just didn't like the boss.

Conversation 3

Man: Where's Tony?

Woman: I think he took his bike out to get

some soda.

Man: Really? Do you think he can see out

there? I mean it's pitch dark!

Woman: I don't know. I'm sure he's fine. It's only been about an hour.

Question 4: Which of these sentences is true?

Man: One hour! The store is just five minutes from here. I hope he's OK.

Conversation 4

Woman: Where were you? I waited forty-five minutes before I left.

Man: I thought you were going to pick me up. I had to take a taxi.

Woman: Wait a minute. You said you wanted to leave your car at my house.

Man: That's *not* what I said. I said I wanted to leave my car *at home*.

Question 5: Which of these sentences is true?

Woman: Listen, I'm sorry. Let's not fight over this misunderstanding, OK?

Part 4 Real-World Tasks: Entertainment

Taking Notes page 178

Call 1

Hello. This is the Fox Theater, located in the Town and Country Shopping Center. Today we're proud to present Nicole Kidman in the thrilling sci-fi film, *Invasion*. Show times for Saturday are two, six, and ten o'clock. Tickets are \$10 and \$5.50 for students, senior citizens, and children under 12. For more information, please hang up and call 555-0183. See you at the movies!

Call 2

Manager: Hello. Blue Note Jazz and Supper Club.

Ming: Hi. I'd like some information.

Manager: Sure, what would you like to know?Ming: First, is there any live music tonight?Manager: Yes, we have a terrific Brazilian singer named Bebel Gilberto. There are shows at nine and eleven.

Ming: How much is the show?

Manager: We have a \$20 cover charge. But if you come for dinner, the show is free.

Ming: What's your menu like?

Manager: Our specialty is Italian food, but we serve salads and cheeseburgers too.

Ming: Fine. I'd like to make a reservation for two for dinner at eight, and we'll stay for the nine o'clock show. My last name's Lee—that's L-E-E.

Manager: Very good Ms. Lee, we'll see you at eight.

Call 3

You have reached the information line for Gallery Shibuya, which features live music nightly. The gallery is proud to present, Buffalc Daughter, now through August 6th. For show times, press 1. For directions to gallery Shibuya, press 2. For ticket information and ticket orders, press 3.

Clerk: Hi, this is Sherry speaking. Can I help you?

Ming: Yes, uh, do you still have tickets for the August 4th Buffalo Daughter show?

Clerk: How many tickets?

Ming: Two.

Clerk: I'll check.

Clerk: Yes, we have tickets for \$20.00. *Ming:* Is there a special price for students?

Clerk: Yes, student tickets are \$8.50.

Ming: OK, that's good.

Clerk: All right, two student tickets at \$8.50 each, that's \$17.00. There is also a service charge of \$1.00 per ticket, so your total comes to \$19.00. And how would you like to pay for your tickets?

Ming: Can you hold them for me for ten minutes—I'm just a block away from you?

Clerk: I can do that—and then there's no service charge. May I have your full name please?

Ming: Ming Lee.

Clerk: Ming—M-I-N-G?

Ming: Right.

Clerk: And we need your phone number please,

Ms. Lee?

Ming: 310-555-0176.

Clerk: OK, so we'll see you soon, all right? And remember to bring your student ID with you,

for the student price.

Ming: Thank you very much.

Clerk: You're welcome. Bye-bye.

Ming: Bye.

Chapter 10 Sport

Part 1 Conversation: Explaining a Sport

Listening for Main Ideas page 183

Listening for Details page 184

Listening for Stressed Words page 184

Bruce: OK. Let's warm up and stretch. We've got to work on balance and flexibility.

Peter: So Bruce. When did you get into this Karate stuff?

Kenji: Karate's Japanese. Bruce's showing us

Tae Kwon Do, and it's Korean.

Peter: Cool. So, what's the difference?

Bruce: Tae Kwon Do uses hundreds of different kicking moves. But Karate . . . well, Kenji, it sounds like you know something about Karate.

Kenji: Yeah—Karate uses more punches and blocks, too. Maybe you've seen athletes break wooden boards with punches. You know, like ... I learned that when I was in school.

Peter: That's great. I wish I could do that. So, Bruce, why did you get into Tae Kwon Do?

Bruce: I had a Korean friend in middle school and he said it could help me get in shape and build my confidence. So I tried it, and I really liked it.

Peter: It looks like you succeeded.

Bruce: Well, I'm still working on it. I've really improved my speed and power. It also helps you focus—you'll see.

Peter: Awesome! Let's get started.

Listening for Reductions page 186

Jane: Hi Helen, Are you going out?

Helen: Yeah, I'm going to the football game. My brother's playing and I thought I'd watch him. Do you want to come?

Jane: I really can't . . . I have to study. But can

you do me a favor?

Helen: OK.

Jane: Could you get me tickets for the girls' soccer game next Saturday? My cousin Sue just made the team.

Helen: Sure—that's so cool. What's her position?

Jane: I'm not sure—I'm going to call her, and I can ask her, if you want.

Helen: You don't have to—just wish her luck.

Part 2 Speech: A Wrestler

Taking Notes on Main Ideas page 189

Listening for Specific Information page 190

Hi, my name is Terri Whitmore. I'm 21 years old, I major in psychology, and I love movies and shopping and cats. Yeah, most people think I'm a typical college student. That's until they find out that I'm a champion wrestler. Then of course they're surprised because in most parts of the United States and the world, the idea of women's wrestling is still new. What people don't know is that women's wrestling is growing very quickly, especially since the 2004 Olympics. That's when women's wrestling was finally included as an Olympic sport. Imagine: the sport of wrestling is one of the oldest in history, but women wrestlers couldn't compete until recently.

Anyway, people always ask me, 'Why did you choose wrestling?" Well, to me it was natural. I became interested when I was eight because my brothers were on wrestling teams. They let me participate, and I did very well. I mean I won a lot of matches. But when I turned 12, they didn't want me on the team anymore just because I was a girl. When I went to college, I started to wrestle again, this time on girls' teams.

Another thing people ask is about the rules. Are they the same as for men? Sure. Basically, the main goal in wrestling is to pin your opponent. That means you try to hold their shoulders to the floor for about one-half second. If you do that, you win right away. But there are other ways to win a match, too. You can score points; I mean points for different moves and holds. The wrestler with the most points is the winner. But you need at least three more points. If not, then you go into overtime.

Oh, and then there are all kinds of rules about the parts of the body. You know, the parts that are OK to touch or hold, and things like that. And also, it's important to know that we compete against wrestlers in the same weight group.

Anyway, I'm really glad I chose wrestling. I like

competing as an individual. In team sports, you can always blame someone else for not scoring a goal, or not catching a ball. But my success or n failure depends only on me, not on a teammate. Sure, it's a lot of pressure, but it's made me stronger and more confident.

Part 3 Strategies For Better Listening and Speaking

Focus on Testing: Using Context Clues page 192

- You can do this sport all year: outside in the summer and inside in the winter. You don't need any special equipment, just a bathing suit. You can do it by yourself, but you can't do it without water.
- 2. This sport looks like two people are fighting They wear gloves and special protection for their teeth and sometimes for their heads. Usually men do this sport. But in the past few years, women have been participating in this sport, too.
- 3. This sport is not very old. It started as just a fun activity for young people who wanted to try something different from skiing. It's kind of a mix between surfing and skiing. Sometimes it's called an extreme sport, but in 1998 it became part of the Winter Olympics. Some people think this sport will be more popular than skiing in the future.
- 4. This sport is thousands of years old. Today it's one of the most popular Olympic events because it's very beautiful to watch. Men and women need to have great flexibility, balanc and strength as they perform exercises on the floor or on special equipment.
- 5. This sport is a game between two teams of nine or ten players. One player throws the ball to another, who tries to hit it with a sticl as far as possible. Other players use gloves t catch the ball. This sport is especially popular in North America and Japan.

Part 4 Real-World Tasks: Following Sports News

Sports News on the Radio page 196

Announcer Bill: And now, to Yao Lam and Kristin Fox for Faber College Weekend Sports!

Kristin: Thanks, Bill. Well it was a busy weekend in sports, wasn't it Yao?

Yao: Sure was, Kristin. Well, Faber College men's basketball lost a big game to State College, 76 to 72.

Kristin: Yeah, it was too bad—it was really close down to the last few seconds... On the other hand, our *women's* basketball team won their game easily. They beat Hamilton College 61 to 43.

Yao: They get stronger every game. Now turning to volleyball, the women got a rest this weekend, but the men's team played down at Washington Junior College, and they were just *unbeatable!*

Kristin: That's right—they won all three games: 21 to 15, 21 to 18 and 21 to 12. In the state college tennis tournament, we can be very proud of our own Johnson sisters.

Yao: Yeah, the twins are playing really well. Mary Johnson won her match without any trouble: 6–3, 6–2. It took her just half an hour to finish her opponent, Tina Lewis.

Kristin: Her sister Susan Johnson had to work a little harder, but also was a winner against her rival Lisa Kim. The scores for the sets were 6–4, 4–6, 7–5. It was the longest match of the day.

Yao: And finally, our women's soccer team is playing some matches on a tour down in Brazil.

Kristin: I wish I was down there reporting on that!

Yao: Me too. I understand they just finished their first game, and they almost beat the girls from College Club Rio.

Kristin: Really, what was the score?

Yao: Actually, it was a 3–3 tie—so no losers . . . well that's it, for Weekend Sports.

Kristen and Yao: Go Faber!!

Vocabulary Index

Chapter 1

advisor
call me
came over
(come over)
facilities
move into
No kidding!
orientation
placement test
schedule
sound
stop by
take

Chapter 2

chance of chilly clear

couldn't wait (can't wait)

degrees extra fair skies fall freezing get a tan hiking how come incredible

it's raining cats and dogs

muddy overnight partly cloudy scared showers

sick of (verb + ing)

spring summer

weather forecast

winter

Chapter 3

aisle
beat
calories
cut down on
decay
dip
fiber
firy
gain
groceries
in line
ingredients
melt
pound
produce

produce quart serve skip source take checks tofu

vitamins and minerals

Chapter 4 advantage

convenient
crowded
debit card
disadvantage
drop off (something
or someone)
dry cleaner
give (someone) a ride
have got to

jaywalking laundry run errands smog

Chapter 5

available closet fireplace

furnished/unfurnished

landlord leak lease

month-to-month move (in/out)

pretty
raise
stressed out
studio
vacancy

Chapter 6

adult
adulthood
amazed
ceremony
doggie bag
exotic
handle
impression
lay
leftovers

logical look forward to (something)

napkin passage patio

responsible (for something)

serve set the table silverware so far used to utensil the woods

Chapter 7

swollen

weak

upset stomach

aspirin boxing cardio discount eat right fever headache health club in good/bad shape jog lift weights locker room ought to prescription rest show (someone) around sore throat swim

Chapter 8

average week block

change channels channel surf couch potato

hurt
injury
land
passenger
remote control
run out of
top story

turn down the volume

turn on the TV turn the TV off

the TV waste of time

Chapter 9

be up to
box office
cover charge
good at
graduation
keep in touch
live music
make a reservation
make sense
on the road
pre-med
sales rep
sci-fi movie

service charge show times terrific vacancy

Chapter 10

balance
beat
close
compete
confidence
flexibility
focus
get in shape
get into
individual

It was a close game.

It was a tie!

lose
loser
match
opponent
overtime
rival
score
set
stretch
tennis match
tie

tie warm up

What was the score?

win winner

Skills Index

Academic Focus

Academic Focus	situations, 135
Academic Life Around the World, 2–21	Implied information, 94
Cultures of the World, 100–119	Importance of being able to guess
Entertainment and the Media, 142–159	meanings, 15
Experiencing Nature, 22–39	Locations, 15–16, 53, 75–76
Health, 120–141	Roommates, 94
Home, 82–99	Seasons, 34–35
In the Community, 62–81	Social skills, 163, 174
Living to Eat, or Eating to Live?, 40–61	Sports, 192–193
Social Life, 160–179	Critical Thinking
Sports, 180–199	Comparing interests of old friends 170–171
Academic Skills	Completing a questionnaire and interpretin
Critical thinking. See Critical Thinking	the results, 128–130
Organizing information.	Context, meaning from. See Context
See Graphic Organizers	Distinguishing main ideas from details,
Outlining, 190	13–14, 31
Questionnaires, 128-130, 171-173	Explaining a process, 58, 89
Taking notes	Gathering information from entertainment
as aid to description, 158	posters, 176–177
on causes and effects, 50	Interpreting photographs, 3, 16–17, 23, 24,
comparing of with other students, 14,	32, 33, 34, 41, 42, 47, 49, 52, 63, 64, 71,
18-19, 32, 50, 75, 80, 92, 153, 190	72, 76–77, 83, 84, 89, 98, 99, 101, 102,
the four (five) W's for, 150–151, 153	118, 121, 134, 143, 155, 161, 162,
hints for, 13	176–177, 181, 182, 191, 192–193
on main ideas, 13, 108, 152, 189–190	Interpreting questionnaire results, 130
organizing notes into an outline, 190	Interviewing with possible follow-up
on phone conversations, 138	questions, 48
on positive vs. negative aspects, 92	Locating information in a television program
for recipes, 56	guide, 156–157
reviewing, 190	Organizing information.
on specific information, 14, 31, 37, 50, 74,	See Graphic Organizers
80, 92, 109, 132, 152, 178	Predicting the content before listening, 12
summarizing ideas using, 14, 32, 37, 50,	Speculating on the outcome of a situation, 6
75, 92, 109, 133, 153, 169, 190	Summarizing research, 178
Test-taking. See Test-Taking Skills	Taking notes
Charts. See Graphic Organizers	on causes and effects, 50
Connecting to the Topic, 3, 23, 41, 63, 83, 101,	organizing notes into an outline, 190
121, 143, 161, 181	on positive vs. negative details, 92
Context (understanding new words from)	summarizing ideas using key words
Customs, differences in, 103, 111	from, 14, 32, 37, 50, 75, 92, 109, 133, 153,
Eating places, 52-53	169, 190
Entertainment, 177	See also Academic Skills: Taking
Focus on Testing, 15, 35, 53, 75–76, 94, 112,	notes
135, 154, 174, 192–193	Culture Notes
Identifying products and services in	Apologies, 113
commercials, 154	City blocks, as location and distance, 70
Identifying unusual details within	Cooking measurements, 56

Dining customs, 115 Downtown vs. suburbs, 73 Etiquette vs. informality, 118 Introductions, 11 Prescriptions for medicine, 131 Psychologists, 136 Rules for camping areas and parks, 33 School year, 26 Tag questions, 126

Discussion

Connecting to the Topic, 3, 23, 41, 63, 83, 101, 121, 143, 161, 181 Post-listening, 8, 14, 28, 32, 46, 50-51, 69, 75, 88, 92-93, 106, 109-110, 118, 125, 133, 148, 153, 165, 169, 178, 186, 190-191 Pre-listening, 4, 12, 24, 30, 34, 42, 49, 52, 58, 64, 72, 84, 91, 102, 107, 111, 116, 122, 130, 144, 151, 162, 168, 176-177, 182, 188 Results (questionnaires), 128, 130, 171-173 Talk It Over, 16-17, 32, 35, 48, 51, 60, 76, 90-91, 95, 106, 110, 113, 128-130, 137, 153, 155, 170-173, 175, 194

Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues), 15, 35, 53, 75-76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174, 192 - 193

Graphic Organizers

Charts, 16, 35, 38, 48, 50, 51, 53, 76, 92, 94, 97, 103, 109, 110, 111, 112, 131, 135, 153, 154, 156, 163, 174, 192–193 Concept map, 74 Four (five) W's, 150-151, 153 Matrix diagram, 111 Multi-column chart, 96-97

Problem-solution chart, 131, 132

T-chart, 29

Group and Partner Work

Charts (using), 38, 48, 51, 110, 111, 131 Collaborating on answers, 134 Comparing answers, 20, 35, 99 Discussion. See Discussion Games, 32, 68, 194, 198 Interviewing, 38, 48, 90-91 Oral practice, 9, 10, 71, 79, 88-89, 127, 150, 158, 167, 168 Role-play, 11, 19, 20, 32, 33, 55, 76, 93, 95, 106, 114, 134, 136, 139-140, 178 Writing instructions for and teaching a sport, 198

In This Chapter, 2, 22, 40, 62, 82, 100, 120, 142, 160, 180

Language Tips

Count and noncount nouns, 48 Fares, 80

H at beginning of reductions, 87 Illness symptoms, 139 Weather reports, 36

Listening Genres

Advisor's presentation, 12-14 Health advice, 130-134 Health club tour, 122-125 House tour, 91-92 Instructions, 96-97, 98, 116-117 Lectures, 107–110 Narratives, 30-33 News reports, 150-153 Radio advice show, 49-51 Radio sportscast, 196 Speeches, 12-14, 188-191 Telephone calls, 18-19, 138, 177-178 Weather forecast, 36-37

Listening Skills

Apartment hunting, 85-87, 92 Camping, 31 Coming-of-Age ceremonies, 108-109 Comparing cities and towns, 73-74 Customs, differences in, 103-105, 108-109 Directions, 79, 80 Entertainment options, 177–178 Errands, 66-69 Food, 43-45, 59 Health advice, 132–133 Health appointments, 138-140 Health club tour, 124-125 Housesitting instructions, 96–97 Introducing yourself and others, 5–7 Martial arts, 183-185 Moving instructions, 98 News report, 152 Numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 Regional foods, 59 Setting a table, instructions for, 116-117 Shopping for food, 43–45 Social skills, 164–165, 168–169, 177–178 Sports, 183–186, 189–190, 196 Telephone conversations, 138, 177–178 Telephone messages, 18-19 Television habits discussion, 145–147 Television program guide, 157 Temperature, 36 Vacation plans, 25–28, 31 Weather, 36-37

Listening Strategies

Context, meaning from. See Context Distinguishing between can and can't, 29 Distinguishing between -ed endings in

past-tense verbs, 88 61, 81, 99, 119, 141, 159, 179, 199 Distinguishing between -s endings, 9 Speaking Skills Distinguishing intonation in exclamations, Abilities, 30 166-167 Accidents, 151, 153 Distinguishing intonation in tag Advertising discussion, 155 questions, 126-127 Advice, asking for and giving, 133-134, 136 Listening for details, 5, 14, 26, 43, 50, 66, 86, Age minimum requirements, 110 104, 124, 146, 164, 169, 184, 190 Apartment hunting, 84, 90-91, 92-93, 95 Listening for main ideas, 5, 13, 25, 31, 43, 50, Apologizing, 113-114 66, 73, 85, 92, 103, 108, 124, 132, 145, Body language discussion, 4, 16-17 152, 164, 168, 183 Camping, 30 Listening for reductions, 7-8, 27-28, 45, Coming-of-age ceremonies, 107, 109-110 67-69, 87, 105, 147, 185-186 Comparing cities and towns, 72, 75 Listening for stressed words, 6-7, 26-27, 44. Compliments, giving and accepting, 167-16 66-67, 86, 104-105, 124-125, 146-147, Count and noncount nouns, 48 164-165, 184 Customs, comparing, 107, 111, 113 Listening for the North American "t", 187 Customs, differences in, 102, 106, 109-110, Taking notes on main ideas, 13, 152, 189-190 116, 118 Taking notes on specific information, 14, 31, Dining customs and table manners, 116, 11: 37, 50, 74, 92, 109, 132, 152, 178 Directions, asking for and giving, 77, 79–80 Note Taking. See Academic Skills: Taking -ed endings in past-tense verbs, 88–89 Entertainment options, 176, 178 Post-Listening Activities, 8-11, 14, 28-30, Errands, 64, 69 46-47, 50-51, 69, 75, 88-89, 92-93, 106, Explaining a sport, 198 109-110, 118, 125-127, 133, 148, 153, Explaining rules, 33 165–167, 169, 178, 186–187, 190–191 Food and nutrition, 49, 50-51, 58, 60 **Pre-Listening Activities**, 4–5, 12, 24–25, 30, Food shopping, 42, 46 42-43, 49, 58, 64-65, 72-73, 84-85, 91, Free time, preferences for spending, 176, 102-103, 107-108, 111, 116, 122-123, 178 130-131, 144-145, 150-151, 162-164, 168, Health advice, 130, 133, 134, 136 176-177, 182-183, 188, 195 Health appointments, 139-140 Pronunciation. See Using Language: Health club tour, 122, 125 Pronunciation Instructions, sports, 197–198 Questionnaires Interviews Joining an English Language Club, 171–173 apartments, 90-91 Stress, 128-130 food shopping habits, 48 Reading, Maps, 59, 78, 79 potential roommates, 95 Real-World Tasks seasonal activities, 38 Dining customs, 115-118 Introducing yourself and others, 4, 10-11 Directions, 77-80 Likes and dislikes, 38 Entertainment, 176–178 Locations, 71 Health care advice and appointments, Moving day description, 89 138-140 Nature, 32 Housesitting, 96–97 Neighborhood descriptions, 71 Moving furniture, 98-99 News report summary, 153 Recipes and regional foods, 56-60 Offering food, 60 Sports news, 195-196 Opinions, expressing, 137, 148-150 Telephone messages, 18-20 Party discussion, 175 Telephoning for directions, 80 Playing "Fact or Fiction," 32 Telephoning for information, 20 Playing "Twenty Questions," 194 Television, 156-158 Recipe discussion, 58 Weather reports, 36-37 Refusing food, 60 **Self-Assessment**, Self-Assessment Logs, 21, 39, Requests, making and answering, 93

Seasons, 35 Shopping for food, 42, 46 Smoking issues, 137 Social skills, 182, 165–166, 168, 169-171, 176–177, 178 Sports, 182, 188, 190–191, 192–193, 194, 195, 197–198 Stress questionnaire, 128, 129 Tag questions, intonation of, 127–128 Telephone messages, 19–20 Television programs, 157, 158 Television viewing habits, 144, 148 Travel, 102, 106 Using correct nouns and verbs to describe sports and athletes, 191 Vacation plans, 24 Weather, 28, 36 Test-Taking Skills Checks (for answer that apply), 9, 39, 61, 81, 88, 99, 119, 141, 159, 179, 199 Circing correct responses, 46 Filling in the blanks, 5, 6–7, 8, 25, 28–28, 39, 43, 44, 45, 56, 59, 60, 61, 65, 66–67, 68, 70, 74, 81, 85, 86, 87, 99, 104–105, 113, 119, 123, 124–125, 128, 141, 145, 146–147, 159, 163–165, 179, 182–183, 184, 186, 199 Focus on Testing, See Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Matching, 12, 20, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Using Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80
Smoking issues, 137 Social skills, 162, 165–166, 168, 169–171, 176–177, 178 Sports, 182, 188, 190–191, 192–193, 194, 195, 197–198 Stress questionnaire, 128, 129 Tag questions, intonation of, 127–128 Telephone messages, 19–20 Television programs, 157, 158 Television viewing habits, 144, 148 Travel, 102, 106 Using correct nouns and verbs to describe sports and athletes, 191 Vacation plans, 24 Weather, 28, 36 Test-Taking Skills Checks (for answer that apply), 9, 39, 61, 81, 88, 99, 119, 141, 159, 179, 199 Circing correct responses, 46 Filling in the blanks, 5, 6–7, 8, 25, 26–28, 39, 43, 44, 45, 56, 59, 60, 61, 65, 66–67, 68, 70, 74, 81, 86, 86, 87, 99, 104–105, 113, 119, 123, 124–125, 128, 141, 145, 146–147, 159, 163–165, 179, 182–183, 134, 186, 199 Focus on Testing. See Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 78, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 True/false questions, 5, 28, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Using Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 regional foods, 58–59 regional foods, 58–59 regional foods, 58–59 requests, making and answering, 93 sports, adding and a
Social skills, 162, 165–166, 168, 169–171, 176–177, 178 Sports, 182, 188, 190–191, 192–193, 194, 195, 197–198 Stress questionnaire, 128, 129 Tag questions, intonation of, 127–128 Telephone messages, 19–20 Television viewing habits, 144, 148 Travel, 102, 106 Using correct nouns and verbs to describe sports and athletes, 191 Vacation plans, 24 Weather, 28, 36 Test-Taking Skills Checks (for answer that apply), 9, 39, 61, 81, 88, 99, 119, 141, 159, 179, 199 Circling correct responses, 46 Filling in the blanks, 5, 6–7, 8, 25, 26–28, 39, 43, 44, 45, 56, 59, 60, 61, 65, 66–67, 68, 70, 74, 81, 85, 86, 87, 99, 104–105, 113, 119, 123, 124–125, 128, 141, 145, 146–147, 159, 163–165, 179, 182–183, 184, 186, 199 Focus on Testing. See Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 124, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Using Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 regional foods, 58–59 requests, making and answering, 93 sports, adding -ing or -er to verbs, 191 sports, instructions for, 197–198 tag questions, forming, 127–128 telephone messages, 18–19 telephone messages, 18–19 telephone messages, 18–19 telephone mumbers, 20 telephone messages, 18–19 t
176-177, 178
Sports, 182, 183, 190-191, 192-193, 194, 195, 197-198 Stress questionnaire, 128, 129 Tag questions, intonation of, 127-128 Telephone messages, 19-20 Television programs, 157, 158 Television viewing habits, 144, 148 Travel, 102, 106 Using correct nouns and verbs to describe sports and athletes, 191 Vacation plans, 24 Weather, 28, 36 Test-Taking Skills Checks (for answer that apply), 9, 39, 61, 81, 88, 99, 119, 141, 159, 179, 199 Gircing correct responses, 46 Filling in the blanks, 5, 6-7, 8, 25, 26-28, 39, 43, 44, 45, 56, 59, 60, 16, 56, 66-67, 88, 70, 74, 81, 85, 86, 87, 99, 104-105, 113, 119, 123, 124-125, 128, 141, 145, 146-147, 159, 163-165, 179, 182-183, 184, 186, 199 Focus on Testing. See Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154. 174 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Using Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148-150 apologizing, 113-114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167-168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77-80 sports, instructions for, 197-198 telephone messages, 18-19 telephone messages, 18-19 telephone messages, 18-19 telephone numbers, 20 telephone messages, 18-19 telephone messages, 18-19 telephone numbers, 20 telephone messages, 18-19 telephone messages, 18-19 telephone messages, 18-19 telephone numbers, 20 telephone messages, 18-19 telephone untwhere, 20 tel
Sports, 182, 183, 190-191, 192-193, 194, 195, 197-198 Stress questionnaire, 128, 129 Tag questions, intonation of, 127-128 Telephone messages, 19-20 Television programs, 157, 158 Television viewing habits, 144, 148 Travel, 102, 106 Using correct nouns and verbs to describe sports and athletes, 191 Vacation plans, 24 Weather, 28, 36 Test-Taking Skills Checks (for answer that apply), 9, 39, 61, 81, 88, 99, 119, 141, 159, 179, 199 Gircing correct responses, 46 Filling in the blanks, 5, 6-7, 8, 25, 26-28, 39, 43, 44, 45, 56, 59, 60, 16, 56, 66-67, 88, 70, 74, 81, 85, 86, 87, 99, 104-105, 113, 119, 123, 124-125, 128, 141, 145, 146-147, 159, 163-165, 179, 182-183, 184, 186, 199 Focus on Testing. See Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154. 174 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Using Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148-150 apologizing, 113-114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167-168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77-80 sports, instructions for, 197-198 telephone messages, 18-19 telephone messages, 18-19 telephone messages, 18-19 telephone numbers, 20 telephone messages, 18-19 telephone messages, 18-19 telephone numbers, 20 telephone messages, 18-19 telephone messages, 18-19 telephone messages, 18-19 telephone numbers, 20 telephone messages, 18-19 telephone untwhere, 20 tel
195, 197–198 sports, instructions for, 197–198 tag questions, intonation of, 127–128 tag questions, forming, 127–128 tag questions, 48 weather, 36–38 Pormunciation the North American "t," 187 "can" and "can't," 28–29 dropping the "h" sound, 185 "-ed" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with exclamation with excl
Stress questions, intonation of, 127–128 Tag questions, intonation of, 127–128 Teleyison programs, 157, 158 Television viewing habits, 144, 148 Travel, 102, 106 Using correct nouns and verbs to describe sports and athletes, 191 Vacation plans, 24 Weather, 28, 36 Test-Taking Skills Checks (for answer that apply), 9, 39, 61, 81, 88, 99, 119, 141, 159, 179, 199 Circling correct responses, 46 Filling in the blanks, 5, 6–7, 8, 25, 26–28, 39, 43, 44, 45, 56, 59, 60, 61, 65, 66–67, 88, 70, 74, 81, 85, 86, 87, 99, 104–105, 113, 119, 123, 124–125, 128, 141, 145, 146–147, 159, 163–165, 179, 182–183, 184, 186, 199 Focus on Testing. See Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Using Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 118–114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 tag questions, forming, 127–128 telephone nessages, 18–19 telephone numbers, 20 telephone numbers, 20 telephone numbers, 20 telephone numbers, 20 time expressions, 48 weather, 36–38 Past tense, health advice discussed in, 133 Pronunciation the North American "t," 187 "can" and "can"t," 28–29 dropping the "h" sound, 185 "ed" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with ag questions, 166–167 intonation with tag questions, 166–167 intonation with tag questions, 50–38 Past tense, health advice discussed in, 133 Pronunciation undersourby, 187 "can" and "can"t," 28–29 dropping the "h" sound, 185 "ed" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 intonation with tag questions, 50–80 set selephone numbers (20 time expressions, 48 weather, 36–38 Past tense, health advice discussed in, 133 Pronunciation undersourby, 28–27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 147, 185–186 "e-ed" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with exclama
Tag questions, intonation of, 127–128 Telephone messages, 19–20 Television programs, 157, 158 Television viewing habits, 144, 148 Travel, 102, 106 Using correct nouns and verbs to describe sports and athletes, 191 Vacation plans, 24 Weather, 28, 36 Test-Taking Skills Checks (for answer that apply), 9, 39, 61, 81, 88, 99, 119, 141, 159, 179, 199 Circling correct responses, 46 Filling in the blanks, 5, 6–7, 8, 25, 26–28, 39, 43, 44, 45, 56, 59, 60, 61, 65, 66–67, 68, 70, 74, 81, 85, 86, 87, 99, 104–105, 113, 119, 123, 124–125, 128, 141, 145, 146–147, 159, 163–165, 179, 182–183, 184, 186, 199 Focus on Testing. See Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Using Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 telephone, getting directions on, 80 telephone messages, 18–19 telephonen messages, 18–19 telephonen messages, 18–19 telephonen group informitorm, 20 time expressions, 48 weather, 36–38 Past tense, health advice discussed in, 133 Pronunciation the North American "t," 187 "can" and "can't," 28–29 dropping the "h" sound, 185 "ed" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with tag questions, 166–167 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 144, 185–186 "-s" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with tag questions, 126–127 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 144, 185–186 "-s" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with tag questions, 126–127 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 124–125, 146–147, 164–165, 184 Vocabulary Accidents, 151, 153 Apartment humting, 85, 89, 93 Body parts, 131 Coming-of-age ceremonies, 108, 109–110 Comparing cities
Telephone messages, 19–20 Television programs, 157, 158 Television viewing habits, 144, 148 Travel, 102, 106 Using correct nouns and verbs to describe sports and athletes, 191 Vacation plans, 24 Weather, 28, 36 Test-Taking Skills Checks (for answer that apply), 9, 39, 61, 81, 88, 99, 119, 141, 159, 179, 199 Circling correct responses, 46 Filling in the blanks, 5, 6–7, 8, 25, 26–28, 39, 43, 44, 45, 56, 59, 60, 61, 65, 66–67, 68, 70, 74, 81, 85, 86, 87, 99, 104–105, 113, 119, 123, 124–125, 128, 141, 145, 146–147, 159, 163–165, 179, 182–183, 184, 186, 199 Focus on Testing, See Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Using Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 telephonne numbers, 20 telephoning for information, 20 time expressions, 48 weather, 36–38 Past tense, health advice discussed in, 133 Pronunciation the North American "t," 187 "can" and "can"," 28–29 dropping the "h" sound, 185 "-ed" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 intonation with ag questions, 126–127 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 147, 185–186 "-s" ending, 8–9 stressed words, 6–7, 2–27, 44, 66–67, 86, 104–105, 124–125, 146–147, 164–165, 184 Vocabulary Accidents, 151, 153 Apartment hunting, 85, 89, 93 Body parts, 131 Coming-of-age ceremonies, 108, 109–110 Comparing cities and towns, 73, 75 Cooking, 56 Customs, differences in, 103, 106, 108, 109–110 Dining customs, 116, 118 Entertainment, 177, 178 Helphone mumbers, 20 time expressions, 48 weather, 36
Television programs, 157, 158 Television viewing habits, 144, 148 Travel, 102, 106 Using correct nouns and verbs to describe sports and athletes, 191 Vacation plans, 24 Weather, 28, 36 Test-Taking Skills Checks (for answer that apply), 9, 39, 61, 81, 88, 99, 119, 141, 159, 179, 199 Circling correct responses, 46 Filling in the blanks, 5, 6-7, 8, 25, 26-28, 39, 43, 44, 45, 56, 59, 60, 61, 65, 66-67, 68, 70, 74, 81, 85, 86, 87, 99, 104-105, 113, 119, 123, 124-125, 128, 141, 145, 146-147, 159, 163-165, 179, 182-183, 184, 186, 199 Focus on Testing. See Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Using Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148-150 apologizing, 113-114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167-168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77-80 telephonen numbers, 20 time expressions, 48 weather, 36-38 Past tense, health advice discussed in, 133 Pronunciation the North American "t." 187 "can" and "can't," 28-29 dropping the "h" sound, 185 "-ed" ending in past tense verbs, 88-89 intonation with exclamations, 166-167 intonation with tag questions, 166-167 intonation with tag questions, 26-47 reductions, 7-8, 27-28, 45, 67-69, 87, 105, 147, 185-186 "-s" ending, 19 stressed words, 6-7, 26-27, 44, 66-67, 86, 104-105, 124-125, 146-147, 164-165, 184 Vocabulary Accidents, 151, 153 Apartment hunting, 85, 88, 93 Body parts, 131 Coming-of-age ceremonies, 108, 109-110 Comparing cities and towns, 73, 75 Cooking, 56 Customs, differences in, 103, 106, 108, 109-110 Dining customs, 116, 118 Entertainment, 177, 178 Errands, 65, 69, 67 cooking, 56 Cooking, 56 Customs, 67 Cooking, 56 Customs, 166-167 intonation with tag questions, 166-167 intonation with tag vertients, 18-4 C-ed" ending in past tense verbs, 88-89 intonation with exclamations, 166-167 intonation with tag vertients,
Television viewing habits, 144, 148 Travel, 102, 106 Using correct nouns and verbs to describe sports and athletes, 191 Vacation plans, 24 Weather, 28, 36 Test-Taking Skills Checks (for answer that apply), 9, 39, 61, 81, 88, 99, 119, 141, 159, 179, 199 Circling correct responses, 46 Filling in the blanks, 5, 6-7, 8, 25, 26-28, 39, 43, 44, 45, 56, 59, 60, 61, 65, 66-67, 68, 70, 74, 81, 85, 86, 87, 99, 104-105, 113, 119, 123, 124-125, 128, 141, 145, 146-147, 159, 163-165, 179, 182-183, 184, 186, 199 Focus on Testing. See Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Using Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148-150 apologizing, 113-114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167-168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77-80 Test-Taking Skills telephoning for information, 20 time expressions, 48 weather, 36-38 Past tense, health advice discussed in, 133 Pronunciation the North American "t." 187 "can" and "can't," 28-29 dropping the "h' sound, 185 "-ed" ending in past tense verbs, 88-89 intonation with tax questions, 126-127 numbers (teens or tens), 46-47 reductions, 7-8, 27-28, 45, 67-69, 87, 105, 147, 185-186 "-s" ending in past tense verbs, 88-89 intonation with tax questions, 126-127 numbers (teens or tens), 46-47 reductions, 7-8, 27-28, 45, 67-69, 87, 105, 147, 185-186 "-s" ending in past tense verbs, 88-89 intonation with tax questions, 126-127 numbers (teens or tens), 46-47 reductions, 7-8, 27-28, 45, 67-69, 87, 105, 147, 185-186 "-s" ending in past tense verbs, 88-89 intonation with tax questions, 126-127 numbers (teens or tens), 46-47 reductions, 7-8, 27-28, 45, 67-69, 87, 105, 147, 185-186 "-s" ending in past tense verbs, 88-89 intonation with tax questions, 126-127 numbers (teens or tens), 46-47 reductions, 7-8, 27-28, 45, 67-69, 87, 105, 147, 185-186 "-s" end
Travel, 102, 106 Using correct nouns and verbs to describe sports and athletes, 191 Vacation plans, 24 Weather, 28, 36 Test-Taking Skills Checks (for answer that apply), 9, 39, 61, 81, 88, 99, 119, 141, 159, 179, 199 Circling correct responses, 46 Filling in the blanks, 5, 6-7, 8, 25, 26-28, 39, 43, 44, 45, 56, 59, 60, 61, 65, 66-67, 68, 70, 74, 81, 85, 86, 87, 99, 104-105, 113, 119, 123, 124-125, 128, 141, 145, 146-147, 159, 163-165, 179, 182-183, 184, 186, 199 Focus on Testing. See Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Using Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148-150 apologizing, 113-114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167-168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77-80 time expressions, 48 weather, 36-38 Past tense, health advice discussed in, 133 Pronumciation the North American "t," 187 "can" and "can't." 28-29 dropping the "h" sound, 185 "-ed" ending in past tense verbs, 88-89 intonation with exclamations, 166-167 intonation with tag questions, 166-167 intonation with ag questions, 126-127 numbers (teens or tens), 48-47 reductions, 7-8, 27-28, 45, 67-69, 87, 105, 147, 185-186 "-s" ending in past tense verbs, 88-89 intonation with exclamations, 166-167
Using correct nouns and verbs to describe sports and athletes, 191 Vacation plans, 24 Weather, 28, 36 Test-Taking Skills Checks (for answer that apply), 9, 39, 61, 81, 88, 99, 119, 141, 159, 179, 199 Circling correct responses, 46 Filling in the blanks, 5, 6–7, 8, 25, 26–28, 39, 43, 44, 45, 56, 59, 60, 61, 65, 66–67, 68, 70, 74, 81, 85, 86, 87, 99, 104–105, 113, 119, 123, 124–125, 128, 141, 145, 146–147, 159, 163–165, 179, 182–183, 184, 186, 199 Focus on Testing. See Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Using Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 Weather, 36–38 Past tense, health advice discussed in, 133 Pronunciation the North American "t," 187 "can" and "can't," 28–29 dropping the "h" sound, 185 "-ed" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with tag questions, 166–127 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 147, 185–186 "-s" ending, 19 ast tense, verbs, 88–89 intonation with tag questions, 126–127 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 147, 185–186 "-s" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with tag questions, 126–127 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 147, 185–186 "-s" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with tag questions, 126–127 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 147, 185–186 "-s" ending, 19 astresse dwords, 6–7, 26–27, 44, 66–67, 86, 104–105, 124–125, 146–147, 164–165, 184 Vocabluary Accidents, 151, 153 Apartment hunting, 85, 89, 93 Body parts, 131 Coming-of-age ceremonies, 108, 109–110 Dining customs, 126–127 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67
Focus on Testing. See Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 146, 184 Using Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 compt ments, giving and receiving, 167–168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, 38, 99, 119, 114, 159, 163 Veather, 28, 36 Pronunciation the North American "t," 187 "can" and "can't," 28–29 dropping the "h" sound, 185 "-ed" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 intonation with tag questions, 166–167 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 147, 185–186 "-s" ending, 8–9 stressed words, 6–7, 26–27, 44, 66–67, 86, 104–105, 124–125, 146–147, 164–165, 184 Vocabulary Accidents, 151, 153 Apartment hunting, 85, 88, 93 Body parts, 131 Coming-of-age ceremonies, 108, 109–110 Dining customs, 116, 118 Entertainment, 177, 178 Errands, 65, 69, 76–77 Food and nutrition, 49 Food and nutrition, 49 Food and nutrition, 49 Food and nutrition, 49 Food shopping, 43, 46 Health advice, 131, 133 Health clubs, 123
Vacation plans, 24 Weather, 28, 36 Test-Taking Skills Checks (for answer that apply), 9, 39, 61, 81, 88, 99, 119, 141, 159, 179, 199 Circing correct responses, 46 Filling in the blanks, 5, 6-7, 8, 25, 26-28, 39, 43, 44, 45, 56, 59, 60, 61, 65, 66-67, 68, 70, 74, 81, 85, 86, 87, 99, 104-105, 113, 119, 123, 124-125, 128, 141, 145, 146-147, 159, 163-165, 179, 182-183, 184, 186, 199 Focus on Testing. See Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Using Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148-150 apologizing, 113-114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167-168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77-80 Pronunciation the North American "t," 187 the North American "t," 187 the North American "t," 187 can" and "can"t," 28-29 dropping the "h" sound, 185 "-ed" ending in past tense verbs, 88-89 intonation with tax questions, 126-127 numbers (teens or tens), 46-47 reductions, 7-8, 27-28, 45, 67-69, 87, 105, 147, 185-186 "-s" ending in past tense verbs, 88-89 intonation with tax questions, 126-127 numbers (teens or tens), 46-47 reductions, 7-8, 27-28, 45, 67-69, 87, 105, 147, 185-186 "-s" ending in past tense verbs, 88-89 intonation with tax questions, 126-127 numbers (teens or tens), 46-47 reductions, 7-8, 27-28, 45, 67-69, 87, 105, 147, 185-186 "-s" ending in past tense verbs, 88-89 intonation with tax questions, 126-127 numbers (teens or tens), 46-47 reductions, 7-8, 27-28, 45, 67-69, 87, 105, 147, 185-186 "-s" ending, 8-9 stressed words, 6-7, 26-27, 44, 66-67, 86, 104-105, 124-125, 146-147, 164-165, 184 Vocabulary Accidents, 151, 153 Apartment hunting, 85, 88, 93 Body parts, 131 Coming-of-age ceremonies, 108, 109-110 Dining customs, 116, 118 Entertainment, 177, 178 Errands, 65, 69, 76-77 Food and nutrition, 49 Food shopping, 43, 46 Health advice, 131, 133 Health clubs, 123
Test-Taking Skills Checks (for answer that apply), 9, 39, 61, 81, 88, 99, 119, 141, 159, 179, 199 Circing correct responses, 46 Filling in the blanks, 5, 6–7, 8, 25, 26–28, 39, 43, 44, 45, 56, 59, 60, 61, 65, 66–67, 68, 70, 74, 81, 85, 86, 87, 99, 104–105, 113, 119, 123, 124–125, 128, 141, 145, 146–147, 159, 163–165, 179, 182–183, 184, 186, 199 Focus on Testing. See Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 146, 184 Using Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 the North American "t," 187 "can" and "can"t," 28–29 dropping the "h" sound, 185 "-ed" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 intonation with tag questions, 126–127 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 147, 185–186 "-s" ending, 19 between chaining in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 intonation wit
Test-Taking Skills Checks (for answer that apply), 9, 39, 61, 81, 88, 99, 119, 141, 159, 179, 199 Circing correct responses, 46 Filling in the blanks, 5, 6–7, 8, 25, 26–28, 39, 43, 44, 45, 56, 59, 60, 61, 65, 66–67, 68, 70, 74, 81, 85, 86, 87, 99, 104–105, 113, 119, 123, 124–125, 128, 141, 145, 146–147, 159, 163–165, 179, 182–183, 184, 186, 199 Focus on Testing. See Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Using Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 "can" and "can't," 28–29 dropping the "h" sound, 185 "-ed" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 intonation with exclamations, 126–127 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 147, 185–186 "-s" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 intonation with exclamations, 126–127 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 147, 185–186 "-s" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 intonation with exclamations, 126–127 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 147, 185–186 "-s" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 intonation with exclamations, 126–127 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 147, 185–186 "-s" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with tag questions, 126–127
Checks (for answer that apply), 9, 39, 61, 81, 88, 99, 119, 141, 159, 179, 199 Circing correct responses, 46 Filling in the blanks, 5, 6-7, 8, 25, 26–28, 39, 43, 44, 45, 56, 59, 60, 61, 65, 66–67, 68, 70, 74, 81, 85, 86, 87, 99, 104–105, 113, 119, 123, 124–125, 128, 141, 145, 146–147, 159, 163–165, 179, 182–183, 184, 186, 199 Focus on Testing. See Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Using Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 Checks (for answer that apply), 9, 39, 61, 81, 88, 99 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 intonation with tag questions, 126–127 intonation with tag questions, 126–127 in
"ed" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 intonation with tag questions, 126–127 mumbers (teens or tens), 46–127 mumbers (teens or tens), 46–127 mumbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 119, 123, 124–125, 128, 141, 145, 146–147, 159, 163–165, 179, 182–183, 184, 186, 199 ## Focus on Testing. See Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Using Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 "-ed" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with tag questions, 166–167 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–80 endoing in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–80 endoing in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–80 endoing in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 147, 185–186 "-s" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 147, 185–186 "-s" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with exclamations, 166–167 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 147, 185–186 "-s" ending in past tense verbs, 88–89 intonation with exclamations, 126–127 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 147, 185–186 "-s" ending in past tense verbs, 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 147, 185–186 "-s" ending in past tens(har) reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 147, 185–186
Circling correct responses, 46 Filling in the blanks, 5, 6–7, 8, 25, 26–28, 39, 43, 44, 45, 56, 59, 60, 61, 65, 66–67, 68, 70, 74, 81, 85, 86, 87, 99, 104–105, 113, 119, 123, 124–125, 128, 141, 145, 146–147, 159, 163–165, 179, 182–183, 184, 186, 199 Focus on Testing. See Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Using Language Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 intonation with tag questions, 126–127 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 147, 185–186 "-s" ending, 8–9 stressed words, 6–7, 26–27, 44, 66–67, 86, 104–105, 124–125, 146–147, 164–165, 184 Vocabulary Accidents, 151, 153 Apartment hunting, 85, 88, 93 Body parts, 131 Coming-of-age ceremonies, 108, 109–110 Comparing cities and towns, 73, 75 Cooking, 56 Customs, differences in, 103, 106, 108, 109–110 Dining customs, 116, 118 Entertainment, 177, 178 Errands, 65, 69, 76–77 Food and nutrition, 49 Food shopping, 43, 46 Health advice, 131, 133 Health clubs, 123
Filling in the blanks, 5, 6–7, 8, 25, 26–28, 39, 43, 44, 45, 56, 59, 60, 61, 65, 66–67, 68, 70, 74, 81, 85, 86, 87, 99, 104–105, 113, 119, 123, 124–125, 128, 141, 145, 146–147, 159, 163–165, 179, 182–183, 184, 186, 199 Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Using Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 intonation with tag questions, 126–127 numbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 147, 185–186 "s" ending, 8–9 stressed words, 6–7, 26–27, 44, 66–67, 86, 104–105, 124–125, 146–147, 164–165, 184 Vocabulary Accidents, 151, 153 Apartment hunting, 85, 88, 93 Body parts, 131 Coming-of-age ceremonies, 108, 109–110 Comparing cities and towns, 73, 75 Cooking, 56 Customs, differences in, 103, 106, 108, 109–110 Dining customs, 116, 118 Errands, 65, 69, 76–77 Food and nutrition, 49 Food shopping, 43, 46 Health advice, 131, 133 Health clubs, 123
43, 44, 45, 56, 59, 60, 61, 65, 66–67, 68, 70, 74, 81, 85, 86, 87, 99, 104–105, 113, 119, 123, 124–125, 128, 141, 145, 146–147, 159, 163–165, 179, 182–183, 184, 186, 199 Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Using Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 mumbers (teens or tens), 46–47 reductions, 7–8, 27–28, 45, 67–69, 87, 105, 147, 185–186 "s" ending, 8–9 stressed words, 6–7, 26–27, 44, 66–67, 86, 104–105, 124–125, 146–147, 164–165, 184 Vocabulary Accidents, 151, 153 Apartment hunting, 85, 88, 93 Body parts, 131 Coming-of-age ceremonies, 108, 109–110 Comparing cities and towns, 73, 75 Cooking, 56 Customs, differences in, 103, 106, 108, 109–110 Dining customs, 116, 118 Errands, 65, 69, 76–77 Food and nutrition, 49 Food shopping, 43, 46 Health advice, 131, 133 Health clubs, 123
70, 74, 81, 85, 86, 87, 99, 104–105, 113, 119, 123, 124–125, 128, 141, 145, 146–147, 159, 163–165, 179, 182–183, 184, 186, 199 stressed words, 6–7, 26–27, 44, 66–67, 86, 104–105, 124–125, 146–147, 164–165, 184 (Using Context Clues) See Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Watching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Using Language Language Customs abilities, talking about, 29 apologizing, 113–114 Segrement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 Segrement, 177, 178 Segrement, 184 Segrement, 184 Segrement, 184 Segrement, 184 Segrement, 184 Segrement, 184 Segrement, 185 Segrement, 185 Segrement, 186 Segrement, 187, 178 Segrement, 177, 178 Segrement, 187, 188 Segrement, 186 Segrement, 186 Segrement, 186 Segrement, 187, 188 Segrement, 188
119, 123, 124–125, 128, 141, 145, 146–147, 159, 163–165, 179, 182–183, 184, 186, 199 stressed words, 6–7, 26–27, 44, 66–67, 86, 104–105, 124–125, 146–147, 164–165, 184 (Vocabulary) Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 Coming-of-age ceremonies, 108, 109–110 Comparing cities and towns, 73, 75 Cooking, 56 Using Language Customs, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Cooking, 184 Customs, agreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 Errands, 65, 69, 76–77 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 Health clubs, 123
146–147, 159, 163–165, 179, 182–183, 184, 186, 199 stressed words, 6–7, 26–27, 44, 66–67, 86, Focus on Testing. See Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues) Wocabulary Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Apartment hunting, 85, 88, 93 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Using Language Customs, 15, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 16, 184 Using Language Customs, 129 apologizing, 113–114 agreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 apologizing
stressed words, 6-7, 26-27, 44, 66-67, 86, 104-105, 124-125, 146-147, 164-165, 184 Wocabulary
Tocus on Testing. See Focus on Testing (Using Context Clues)
(Using Context Clues) Vocabulary Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116, 117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Accidents, 151, 153 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 Body parts, 131 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Coming-of-age ceremonies, 108, 109–110 Using Language Customs, differences in, 103, 106, 108, 109–110 Language function abilities, talking about, 29 apologizing, 113–114 agreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 apologizing,
Matching, 12, 30, 36, 49, 73, 91, 108, 116,
117, 134, 151, 156, 167, 188 Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Comparing cities and towns, 73, 75 Cooking, 56 Using Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 apologizing, 113–114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 Apartment hunting, 85, 88, 93 Body parts, 131 Coming-of-age ceremonies, 108, 109–110 Comparing cities and towns, 73, 75 Cooking, 56 Customs, differences in, 103, 106, 108, 109–110 Dining customs, 116, 118 Entertainment, 177, 178 Errands, 65, 69, 76–77 Food and nutrition, 49 Food shopping, 43, 46 Health advice, 131, 133 Health clubs, 123
Multiple choice, 16, 53, 76, 94, 112, 135, 154, 174 Coming-of-age ceremonies, 108, 109–110 True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Cooking, 56 Using Language Customs, differences in, 103, 106, 108, Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 Body parts, 131 Coming-of-age ceremonies, 108, 109–110 Comparing cities and towns, 73, 75 Cooking, 56 Customs, differences in, 103, 106, 108, 109–110 Dining customs, 116, 118 Entertainment, 177, 178 Errands, 65, 69, 76–77 Food and nutrition, 49 Food shopping, 43, 46 Health advice, 131, 133 Health clubs, 123
True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104, 146, 184 Coming-of-age ceremonies, 108, 109–110 Comparing cities and towns, 73, 75 Cooking, 56 Using Language Customs, differences in, 103, 106, 108, 109–110 abilities, talking about, 29 apreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 Coming-of-age ceremonies, 108, 109–110 Comparing cities and towns, 73, 75 Cooking, 56 Customs, differences in, 103, 106, 108, 109–110 Dining customs, 116, 118 Entertainment, 177, 178 Errands, 65, 69, 76–77 Food and nutrition, 49 Food shopping, 43, 46 Health advice, 131, 133 Health clubs, 123
True/false questions, 5, 26, 43, 66, 86, 104,
146, 184 Using Language Using Language Customs, differences in, 103, 106, 108, 109–110 abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 Customs, 56 Customs, differences in, 103, 106, 108, 109–110 Dining customs, 116, 118 Entertainment, 177, 178 Errands, 65, 69, 76–77 Food and nutrition, 49 Food shopping, 43, 46 Health advice, 131, 133 Health clubs, 123
Using Language Language function abilities, talking about, 29 agreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 Customs, differences in, 103, 106, 108, 109–110 Dining customs, 116, 118 Entertainment, 177, 178 Errands, 65, 69, 76–77 Food and nutrition, 49 Food shopping, 43, 46 Health advice, 131, 133 Health clubs, 123
Language function 109–110 abilities, talking about, 29 Dining customs, 116, 118 agreement and disagreement, 148–150 Entertainment, 177, 178 apologizing, 113–114 Errands, 65, 69, 76–77 compliments, giving and receiving, Food and nutrition, 49 167–168 Food shopping, 43, 46 count and noncount nouns, 48 Health advice, 131, 133 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 Health clubs, 123
abilities, talking about, 29 Dining customs, 116, 118 agreement and disagreement, 148–150 Entertainment, 177, 178 Errands, 65, 69, 76–77 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 Food and nutrition, 49 Food shopping, 43, 46 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 Dining customs, 116, 118 Entertainment, 177, 178 Errands, 65, 69, 76–77 Food and nutrition, 49 Health advice, 131, 133 Health clubs, 123
agreement and disagreement, 148–150 apologizing, 113–114 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 Entertainment, 177, 178 Errands, 65, 69, 76–77 Food and nutrition, 49 Food shopping, 43, 46 Health advice, 131, 133 Health clubs, 123
apologizing, 113–114 Errands, 65, 69, 76–77 compliments, giving and receiving, 167–168 Food shopping, 43, 46 count and noncount nouns, 48 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 Frands, 65, 69, 76–77 Food and nutrition, 49 Health advice, 131, 133 Health clubs, 123
compliments, giving and receiving, Food and nutrition, 49 167–168 Food shopping, 43, 46 count and noncount nouns, 48 Health advice, 131, 133 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 Health clubs, 123
167–168 Food shopping, 43, 46 count and noncount nouns, 48 Health advice, 131, 133 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 Health clubs, 123
count and noncount nouns, 48 Health advice, 131, 133 directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 Health clubs, 123
directions, asking for and giving, 77–80 Health clubs, 123
forgetting a name, 11 Introducing yourself and others, 5
formal vs. informal speech, 5, 7, 11, 93, Orientation for school or work, 12, 14
113, 149 Preview activities, 5, 12, 25, 36, 43, 49, 56,
instructions, sports, 197–198 65, 73, 85, 103, 108, 116, 123, 131, 145,
introducing yourself and others, 10–11 163–164, 177, 182–183, 188, 195
likes and dislikes, 38 Shopping for food, 43, 46
location descriptions, 70–71 Social life, 163–164, 177, 178
10canon descriptions, 10-11 50cm mc, 105-104, 111, 110

Sports, 182–183, 186, 188, 191, 195 Television viewing habits, 145, 148 Vacation plans, 30, 32 Weather, 25, 28, 36

Writing

Apartment information, 90–91
Charts. See Graphic Organizers
Definitions, 131
Directions, 78
Instructions, 198
List of good qualities, 155
Note taking, See Academic Skill

Note taking. See Academic Skills: Taking Notes

Questionnaires, 128–129, 171–173 Self-Assessment Logs, 21, 39, 61, 81, 99, 119, 141, 159, 179, 199

Test taking. See Test-Taking Skills





Student's Book Facts

'Listening strategies' sections	47
'Speaking strategies' sections	43
'Pronunciation strategies' sections	26
'Critical thinking skills' sections	40
Vocabulary building sections	39
TOEFL iBT Focus on Testing! sections	-10
Self-Assessment logs	10
Audioscripts	1
Chapter-by-chapter vocabulary index	/

her components for this level:

- Listening & Speaking Teacher's Edition
- Listening & Speaking Audio Program
- Reading Student's Book
- Reading Teacher's Edition
- Reading Audio Program
- Reading EZ Test
- Writing Student's Book
- Writing Teacher's Edition
- Grammar Student's Book
- Grammar Teacher's Edition
- Online Learning Center:

Interactions/Mosaic is a newly revised, comprehensive program designed to prepare students for academic success. The program integrates chapter themes across the four skill strands and aniculates the books up and down the proficiency levels.

New to this edition:

- Updated content specifically for the Middle East properes students for the type of work they will encounterin real-world academic structions
- Enhanced focus on vocabulary building, testetaking, and critical thinking strategies provides students with the tools they need for academic success
- Teacher-approved contemporary, fresh full-color design deepens the learning experience
- Focus on testing for TOETL® IBT sections written by a team of testing experts bring students valuable test-taking tips and strategies
- Self-assessmentages encourage students to evaluate theirlearning
- Flobust teacher support package with upgraded Teacher's Books and new EZ Test CD-ROMs offers teachers a wealth of reinforcement and extension materials
- An emphasis on Best Practices promotes excellence in teaching and learning



1584-13: 978-007712404-5